
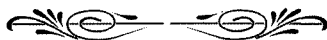
 A 
STUDY
OF THE
MONGOL
KHAMNIGAN
SPOKEN
IN
NORTHEASTERN
MONGOLIA



<Errata, Corrigenda>

A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

page	line	error	read as	cf.
49	26	hundred	move to the left just under <i>juu</i> to become <i>two hundred</i>	sentence (4)
49	26	over	move to the left just under <i>garee</i>	sentence (4)
49	26	household-having	move to the left just under <i>ürk ayl-tee</i>	sentence (4)
70	32	bül	move to the right just after <i>am</i> to become <i>am bül</i>	sentence (3)
70	32	how	move to the right just before <i>many</i> to become <i>how many COL-REF-2POL</i>	sentence (3)

**A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken
in Northeastern Mongolia**

**“This work was supported by the Korea Research Foundation Grant funded by the Korean Government (MOEHRD, Basic Research Promotion Fund)”
(KRF-2006-322-A00054)**

**A STUDY OF THE MONGOL
KHAMNIGAN SPOKEN IN
NORTHEASTERN MONGOLIA**

YU Wonsoo

YU Wonsoo Institute of Humanities, Seoul National University, Korea

Altaic Languages Series 4

A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

Copyright © 2011 by The Altaic Society of Korea

Printed in Seoul, Korea

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means, except for brief quotations, without written permission from Seoul National University Press.

Seoul National University Press

1 Gwanak-ro, Gwanak-gu, Seoul 151-742, Korea

E-mail: snubook@snu.ac.kr

Home Page: <http://www.snupress.com>

First Printing: June 30, 2011

ISBN 978-89-521-1223-1 93970

Contents

Preface	vii
Abbreviations	xi
1. General Introduction	1
1.1 The Khamnigan people of Mongolia and their linguistic situation	1
1.2 The Khamnigan people of China and Russia	4
2. General description of the fieldwork studies in Khentii <i>aimag</i> , Mongolia	7
2.1 Participants	7
2.2 Questionnaire, equipment, and method	7
2.3 Trip to Khentii <i>aimag</i>	8
2.3.1 From Ulaanbaatar to Chingisiin Tonoot of Binder <i>sum</i> , Khentii <i>aimag</i>	8
2.3.2 From Chingisiin Tonoot of Binder <i>sum</i> to Gurvan Nuur of Dadal <i>sum</i> , Khentii <i>aimag</i>	9
2.4 Consultants	10
2.4.1 Mrs. Jigmed TSETSEGMAA	10
2.4.2 Mrs. Luvsangtsereng TSEND-AYUUSH	13
2.4.3 Mrs. Chultem DARKHAA	14

3. Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia	17
3.1 Phonological description	17
3.1.1 Vowels	17
3.1.2 Consonants	20
3.1.3 Diachronic and synchronic considerations	22
3.2 Morphological description	35
3.2.1 Parts of speech	35
3.3 Syntactic description	84
3.3.1 Word order	84
3.3.2 Conjunctions	85
3.3.3 Negation	87
3.3.4 Interrogatives	89
3.3.5 Passive	90
3.3.6 Causative	91
Appendix 1. Vocabulary	95
Appendix 2. Basic Conversational Expressions	191
Appendix 3. Data for Grammatical Analysis	215
References	251
Abstract	255

Preface

The Mongolic languages team of the Altaic Society of Korea, Researches on Endangered Altaic Languages (henceforth ASK REAL) carried out its fieldwork studies on endangered Mongolic languages and their dialects from September of 2003 to February of 2009. Information is given in the following order: name of the object language (dialect); place of the fieldwork study; date of the fieldwork study.

1. Dagur (Qiqihaer); Meilis Dagur Nationality District, Qiqihaer City, Heilongjiang Province, China; 2003. 9. 23.—9. 26.
2. Buryat (Aga Khorï); Ulan-Ude; 2004. 4. 22.—4. 23.
(2-1. Buryat (Khorï); Seoul, Korea; 2004. 10. 8., 10. 10.)
3. Ööld (Düükhee/Döchin Tolgoi); Ölziit Sum, Arkhangai Aimag, Mongolia; 2004. 6. 26.
4. Dagur (Tacheng); Tacheng City, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region; 2004. 10. 18.—10. 21.
5. Khuuchin Barga; Hailaer District, Hunlunbeier City, Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, China; 2005. 2. 16.—2. 19.
6. Darkhad; Jankhain Tsagaan Ereg, Alag-Erdene Sum, Khövsgöl Aimag, Mongolia; 2005. 6. 23.—6. 26.
(6-1. Darkhad; Seoul, Korea; 2007. 6. 23., 6. 28.)
7. Shera Yogur or Eastern Yugur; Hongwansi Town, Sunan Yugu Nationality Autonomous County, China (中國 甘肅省 肅南裕

- 固族自治縣 紅灣寺鎮); 2005. 10. 17.—10. 21.
8. Kalmyk (Dörved); Elista City, Kalmyk Republic, Russia; 2006. 4. 18.—4. 21.
 9. Arig Uriankhai; Byarangiin gol, Chandman-Öndör Sum, Khövsgöl Aimag, Mongolia; 2006. 6. 27.—6. 29.
 10. Üüriin Uriankhai; Tsegtseriing üzüür, Tsagaan Üür Sum, Khövsgöl Aimag, Mongolia; 2006. 7. 1.—7. 3.
 11. Bonan (Nianduhu, Tongren); Xining City, Qinghai Province, China (中國 青海省 西寧市): 2006. 8. 19.—8. 21.
 12. Monguor (Minhe); Xining City, Qinghai Province, China (中國 青海省 西寧市): 2006. 8. 23.—8. 25.
 13. Buryat (Ekhirit-Bulagat); Ust-Ordynsk City, Irkutsk Oblast, Russia; 2007. 1. 19.—1. 22.
 14. Buryat (Alar); Cheremkhovo City, Irkutsk Oblast, Russia; 2007. 1. 23.—1. 25.
 15. Buryat (Tunka); Arshaan Village, Tunkiinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 1. 27.—1. 28.
 16. Buryat (Oka); Arshaan, Tunkiinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 1. 29.
 17. Mongolian (Khamnigan); Chingisiin toonot of Binder Sum and Gurvan Nuur of Dadal Sum, Khentii Aimag, Mongolia; 2007. 7. 6.—7. 11.
 18. Buryat (Tsongool); Tashir Village, Selengiinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 8. 3.—8. 5.
 19. Buryat (Sartuul); Ulzar Village, Dzidinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 8. 6.—8. 7.
 20. Buryat (Bargazaan); Bayangol Village, Barguzin Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 8. 10.
 21. Oirat (Hoboksair); Hebukesaier Autonomous County (和布克賽爾蒙古自治縣), Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 6.—1. 8.
 22. Oirat (Bortala); Jinghe County (精河縣), Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 10.; Urumqi city, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 13.—1. 14.

23. Oirat (Bayangol); Urumqi City, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 11.—1. 12.
24. Mongolian (Baarin); Huhhot City, Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 8. 2.—8. 4.
25. Mongolian (Ordos); Huhhot City, Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 8. 5.—8. 7.
26. Mongolian (Qorchin); Huhhot City, Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 8. 12.—8. 14.
27. Dongxiang (Suonan-Daban); Lanzhou City, Gansu Province, China; 2009. 2. 11.—2. 12.
28. Bonan (Jishishan); Linxia City, Gansu Province, China; 2009. 2. 15.—2. 17.
29. Monguor (Huzhu); Linxia City, Gansu Province, China; 2009. 2. 21.—2. 22.

I participated in all the fieldwork studies on these endangered Mongolic languages. I have been reporting my findings and experiences in Korean as Yu (2003), Yu (2004b), Yu (2007a), Yu (2007b), Yu (2008a), Yu (2008b), Yu (2009b), Yu (2009c), Yu (2010a), or in English as Yu (2004b), Yu et al. (2004), Yu (2006), Yu (2009a), Yu (2010b).

Together with my colleagues, I also published a book Yu et al. (2008c), which is a fieldwork report and linguistic description in English on the Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language. The present work, a fieldwork report and a linguistic description on the language of the Khamnigan people in Khentii *aimag* of Mongolia, is the second report in the form of a book by myself. Personally, I wish for my next reports on the field work studies of Mongolic languages to follow one after another continually.

Our colleagues in ASK REAL also published their field work studies in English in the form of books as Kim et al. (2008) about Manchu, and Li et al. (2008) about Chulym Turkic. We may expect that these scholars publish their second reports in recent days on other Altaic languages.

Abbreviations

1: Personal possessive suffix or personal ending, the first person

2: Personal possessive suffix or personal ending, the second person

3: Personal possessive suffix or personal ending, the third person

ABL: Ablative

ACC: Accusative

AFF: Affirmative particle

AIM: Verbal noun suffix marking “aim, purpose”

BEN: Benedictive mood, benediction

Bu.: Buryat

C: Consonant

Ch.: Chinese

CM: Causative marker

COL: Collective marker

COM: Comitative, completed aspect

CONC: Converbial concessive, verbial conditional, or concessive particle

CONI: Converbial imperfective

CONM: Converbial modal

CONP: Converbial perfective

COR: Corroborative particle

DIR: Directional

DL: Dative-Locative

EMP: Emphatic aspect marking particle

EXC: Exclusive

GEN: Genitive

HYYY: 『華夷譯語』 *Hua-yi-yi-yu*

INC: Inclusive

INS: Instrumental

INT: Intentional mood marker, interjection, or interrogative marker

Ja. : Japanese

Kh.: Khalkha

Ko.: Korean

MM: Middle Mongolian

MUL.: Multitude action, participation

NEG: Negative

ORD: Ordinal

PAS: Past perfective

PER: Permission

PL: Plural

PM: Passive marker

POL: Polite imperative, polite~distant, polite persuasion

PRE: Present imperfective, prescriptive

PRO: Progressive marker

REC: Reciprocal marker

REF: Reflexive possessive

Ru.: Russian

Sa.: Sanskrit

SG: Singular

SH: *The Secret History of the Mongols*

SPE: Speculative marker

Ti.: Tibetan

V: Vowel

VNA: Verbal noun actor

VNF: Verbal noun future imperfective

VNH: Verbal noun habitual

VNI: Verbal noun past imperfective

VNP: Verbal noun perfective or verbal noun progressive present

VOL: Voluntative mood, volition

WM: Written Mongolian

1

General Introduction

1.1 The Khamnigan people of Mongolia and their linguistic situation

There are a small number of people in Mongolia who identify themselves as Khamnigan xun [q^hamɳivǎŋ k^huŋ] and their language also as Khamnigan ayalguu [q^hamɳivǎŋ ajiɮgo:]. According to the National Statistical Office of Mongolia (2010.06.29), there were 574 people in Mongolia who identified themselves as the Khamnigan (Хамниган in Standard Khalkha) in the 2000 census for housing and population. Mongol Khamnigans live mostly in certain *sums* of Khentii, Dornod, Selengge *aimag* mostly with the Buryats in Mongolia.

The Khamnigans are thought to be Evenki descendants, who speak a distinctive Mongolic language which shares many linguistic features with Khalkha, Buryat, and Written Mongolian.¹⁾ It seems that the Mongol Khamnigans had been bilinguals of Evenki and Mongolian for many centuries in the past, and they had totally lost their Evenki proficiency during two or three

1) Janhunen (2005: 5-9) has the similar opinion. He stated that “Linguistically, however, Khamnigan Mongol is a well-defined language, which can only be recognized as a separate member of the Mongolic family.”

generations.

Tungusic elements were still being found in such works of 1950s~1960s on Khamnigan language as U.-Kõhalmi (1959), Mishig (Мишиг, 1962), Rinchen (Ринчен, 1969), even in Shimunek (2009.12.16), who reported at least 8 Evenki vocabularies based on his researches in 2006.²⁾ However, no Tungusic element is found in our data which has at least 2,700 vocabularies. There is a strong possibility that our survey method was problematic to a certain extent in that we asked questions in Khalkha, and our data are the accumulation of the responses of the consultants to those Khalkha forms. However, the fact that no Tungusic element had popped up for days of question and answers with 2,700 vocabularies and 700 sentences suggest that the loss of the Evenki proficiency has been completed.

Our consultants said that there were Khamnigan, Buryat, Khalkha people, etc. but no such thing as Khamnigan Buryat. They emphasized the differences saying, “Khamnigan is Khamnigan, Buryat is Buryat”. Many important aspects of their lives including adoption, marriage, etc. however, seem to be heavily interwound with the Buryats.

Information about the exact number of the Khamnigan people in Mongolia and the portion of the Khamnigan speakers among them are unavailable. Wikipedia (2009.08.18) says there are 300 Khamnigan households, but its source remains untold. It is said that the Khamnigans are living mainly in Binder *sum* and Dadal *sum* of Kentii *aimag*, Mongolia. The numbers of the Khamnigan population of these two *sums* are unavailable either. According to Wikipedia (2009.08.18), populations of Binder and Dadal *Sums*

2) Shimunek (2009) thought following words are from Evenkii: *vtee* ‘son’, *sunaaji* ‘daughter’, *zumbaraa* ‘ground squirrel’, *zembii* ‘large hut’, *bygvtyne* ‘mosquito’, *kypee* ‘reindeer hide’, *üicig* ‘a type of boots’, *deregenee* ‘hyper, rambunctious’. However, consultants did not pronounce these words in our study. It seems that his consultants, mostly in their 70s or 80s, remember few Evenki words. Neither were they able to speak Evenki.

are 3,784 and 2,667 respectively as of 2008. However, it seems there is no way to figure out the size of the three ethnic groups. The languages of the Buryats and the Khamnigans were already assimilated to the Khalkha, the biggest and the strongest dialect not only in the *aimag* but in the whole country.

In standard Mongolian of Mongolia, which happens to be Khalkha, it is written хамниган (khamnigan) meaning ‘those who have Manchu-Tungus language’. In standard Buryat of Buryatia, which happens to be Khori, it is written хамнаган (khamnagan)~хамниган (khamnigan) meaning ‘Evenki, Tungus’. According to Atwood (2004: 171-172), Janhunen (2005: 9-10), and other scholars, the Khamnigans seem to have been a part of the Evenkis. However, our consultants did not know any words of Tungusic origin which were introduced in Rinchen (Ринчен, 1969).

According to Wikipedia, we may classify the Khamnigans of today’s Mongolia into two groups: Khamnigans who were in today’s territory of Mongolia before the Russian revolution (1917), and Khamnigans who came after the Russian revolution (1918).

According to Tsoloo (Цолоо, 1987: 99-111), Khamnigan in Mongolia is regarded as one of the Buryat dialects, and Buryat is regarded as one of the three major Mongolian dialects together with Khalkha and Oirat as summarized in the table below.

Assumed position of the Khamnigan in Mongolia³⁾

Language	Dialect	Sub-dialect	Branch dialect
Mongolian	Khalkha		
	Oirat		
	Buryat	Onon-Ulz River	Khamnigan
			Aga-Khori
			Kudar (or Khüder)
		Barga	
		Selenge-Üür River	Tsongool
			Tunkhin
	Sanaga		

1.2 The Khamnigan people of China and Russia

It seems that the term Khamnigan Mongol has two meanings for Janhunen (2005: 9-13): (1) those Khamnigans who speak Mongolic language, (2) the Mongolic language which the Khamnigans are speaking. According to him, their language Khamnigan Mongol remains a vigorous community language among the emigrant Khamnigan group in the Mergel basin, Hulunbeier City of Inner Mongolia. He claims that there are over 1,500 Khamnigan Mongol speakers in the Mergel basin. He also adds that there are less than 200 Khamnigans in the Imin basin, and their language is being rapidly assimilated to the local dialects of Mongol proper and Buryat.

3) Here 'sub-dialect' and 'branch dialect' are translations of Mongolian terms аман аялгуу (aman ayalguu 'oral dialect') and салбар аман аялгуу (salbar aman ayalguu 'branch oral dialect') respectively.

Again according to Janhunen (2005), the Khamnigan have been found living especially within Nerchinsk Okrug (region) of Chita Oblast. Information on the size of the Khamnigan population and the number of Khamnigan speakers among them in Russia seems to be unavailable.

2

General description of the fieldwork studies in Khentii *aimag*, Mongolia

2.1 Participants

The Mongolic language team of ASK REAL team is made of Wonsoo YU (overall process, transcription), Woogyong SHIN (video recording), Jaeyoung CHOI (audio recording) from Seoul National University and Tömörbaatar PÜREVSÜREN (questioning), Prof. Luvsandorj BOLD (Director) from Institute of Language and Literature, Mongolian Academy of Sciences.

2.2 Questionnaire, equipment, and method

We prepared a questionnaire to ask 2,734 words, 345 conversational expressions, and 384 sentences and constructions about grammatical structure. It was prepared in Khalkha. The consultants were requested to answer twice for each entry.

A Marantz 670 recorder was used for voice recording, and a DSR-PDX10 camcorder for video recording. An AKG C420 headset microphone was used to record the consultants, while the questioner used a AT831b pin microphone.

2.3 Trip to Khentii *aimag*

2.3.1 From Ulaanbaatar to Chingisiin Tonoot of Binder *sum*, Khentii *aimag*

Korean participants left Incheon International Airport at 22:15 (delayed 2 hours and 10 minutes from schedule) of July 5, 2007 by OZ331 (Korean Air), and landed at Chingis International Airport at 00:22 (delayed 1 hour and 57 minutes from schedule) the next day. It was 01:10 when the Korean participants were finally received by their Mongolian colleagues.

The Korean participants spent the night at a hotel called Zaluuchuud at 43 Baga Toiruu, Suhbaatar *düüreg* (district), Ulaanbaatar, Mongolia. At 09:30 the next morning, Koreans left the hotel in two 4-wheel-drives, one Mitsubishi 94 and one Land Cruiser 95, together with their Mongolian colleagues. We changed US dollars into Mongolian tugruks, bought 22 bottles of water, and then picked up the cook of the Chingisiin Tonoot campsite who came to Ulaanbaatar to purchase vegetables. It was 11:45 on July 6 when we were on the eastern limit of Ulaanbaatar City, and when the drivers finally decided that their cars were ready for the long distance journey.

The team arrived at the Chingisiin Tonoot tourist camp site, Binder *sum* of Khentii *aimag* at 20:40 on July 6. According to the odometer of our cars, we were 426 kilometers away from the eastern limit of Ulaanbaatar City. Temperature fluctuated between 14°C~34°C in the car. On the way, we spent 55 minutes for lunch

at the Khaan-Mörön restaurant of Jargaltkhaan *sum* of Khentii *aimag*, another 40 minutes for photographing at Arshaan khad of Batshireet *sum* of the same *aimag*.

2.3.2 From Chingisiin Tonoot of Binder *sum* to Gurvan Nuur of Dadal *sum*, Khentii *aimag*

We left Chingisiin Tonoot, Binder at 09:15 on July 9, 2007 and arrived at Gurvan Nuur campsite of Dadal *sum* at 14:35. The odometer was at 447 kilometers at the departure and 561 kilometers at arrival. On the way, we took 45 minutes to cross the Onon River at Onongiin *garam* ‘crossing of the Onon River’ or Onongiin *Biirwaaz* (< Ru. Перевоз ‘ferry’), another 55 minutes for lunch.



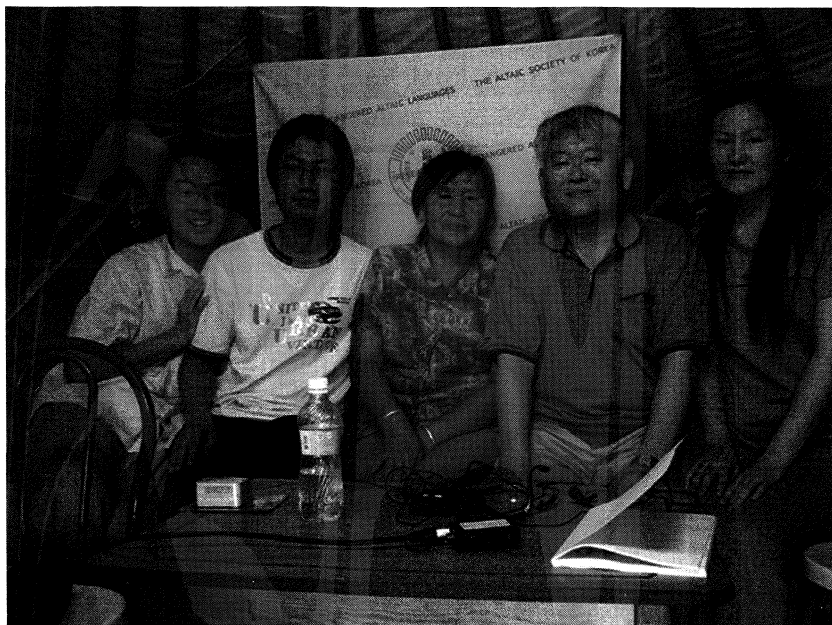
Picture 1. Crossing the Onon

2.4 Consultants

2.4.1 Mrs. Jigmed TSETSEGMAA

We met Mrs. Tsetsegmaa at 12:15 on July 7, 2007 at the Chingiisiin Tonoot tourist campsite. She was accompanied by Mr. Amgalan, a Khamnigan young man who guided her.

Her own identification in her mother tongue is Jigmediin Tsətsəgmaa of Noyon Duligaad clan of Khamnigan tribe of Mongol nation [mɔŋɔɔɔɔɔ ʌndʌstʰəŋ qʰamɳegəŋ jastʰəŋ nɔɔɔn tɔlɔɔjɑ:t ɔmɔɔqtʰɛ tɔikmedi:n tsʰətsʰəɣma:].¹⁾



Picture 2. Mrs. Jigmed TSETSEGMAA with team

1) However, she pronounced her own name in multiple ways. Mostly Cəcəgmaa which is the most Khamniganish, but also Cecegmaa (Khalkhaish) or Səcəgmaa, too.

She was born in 1957 in Tsagaan Nuur of Binder *sum* from a Khamnigan father and a (Borjigin) Khalkha mother from Tsagaan Ovoo, north Khentii. She was still living in her birth place. She lived in Ulaanbaatar in the 7th and 8th grades while attending a specialized middle school for painting and sculpture. Then she returned and stayed at home in Tsagaan Nuur, until she married at the age of 20 with a young Khamnigan man who kidnapped her. Her husband was a man of good nature in every sense, and her family had known him before the marriage because he had grown up in the neighborhood. If he had not kidnapped her, but rather proposed the marriage through the matchmaker as the Khalkha folks usually did, her father would have never allowed it because it was not the marriage custom of the Khamnigans. At 24, she moved to Ulaanbaatar with her husband.

After moving Mrs. Tsetsegmaa lived in Ulaanbaatar for 17 years working as a needle worker. She returned to Tsagaan Nuur upon her husband's death in 1997, which was 10 years before our fieldwork research. She had five children and two grandchildren at the time of our fieldwork, and used to take care of the cattle with her children. One of her two daughters was a student majoring in fine art and fine art education at the National University of Mongolia at the time of our visiting.

The survey through the questionnaire was made from 14:10 to 18:10 on July 7, and from 09:20 to 18:50 on July 8, 2007. We asked questions in Khalkha Mongolian and she replied twice in her Khamnigan to every item requested. As a result, we recorded 2,651 words, 345 conversational expressions, and 386 sentences and constructions for the grammatical structure. We also recorded the self introduction of the consultant and her explanations of Khamnigan customs and the proprieties.

She believed that the languages of her 80 year old father back home and other elders were real Khamnigan, while her language had been consistently exposed to Khalkha Mongolian. Linguistic material from Mrs. Tsetsegmaa, however, is the main object of discussion in this work because she was the best Khamnigan

speaker among those who were able to identify their own precious time to be with us.

2.4.1.1 Mr. Luvsang ERDENETSOGT

Around 21:00 on July 7, 2007, after dinner, Mr. Erdenetsogt, a middle aged Khamnigan, visited Prof. Bold. Soon after Prof. L. Bold, Mrs. Tsetsegmaa, Mr. Erdenetsogt, and I had a pleasant conversation. Mr. Erdenetsogt and our consultant Mrs. Tsetsegmaa had the same teacher (*bagsh*, a shaman they highly trusted) who was once invited to Korea for a service to pray for the rain. While in Korea, the shaman found out and was astonished that the terms and the names of many pieces of equipment used in shaman rituals in Korean are so alike to those of the Khamnigans. They said that their teacher thought that the Khamnigans and the Koreans must have been related to each other in ancient times.

Mr. Erdenetsogt said that he was one of the consultants and cooperators for the fieldwork study of Prof. Yu. Munkh-Amgalan of the National University of Mongolia and Mr. Andrew Shimunek from Indiana University, America. Mr. Erdenetsogt added that the two scholars had visited Binder *sum* over many years during the summer. Mr. Erdenetsogt understood their study as an anthropological linguistic one. Regrettably Mr. Erdenetsogt was so busy training his horses for the racing in *naadam* (national festival) that he was unable to be our consultant.

Mr. Erdenetsogt estimated that the Buryats are the biggest in number, the Khamnigans second, and the Khalkhas third among 4,100 population of the Binder *sum*. Mrs. Tsetsegmaa and Mr. Erdenetsogt did not know the number of the Khamnigans in their *sum*. They repeatedly said that the Khamnigans must have been one big ethnic group (*yastan* ‘those who have the same bone’) in olden times, because there had used to be 32 clans (*omok*) in the past. They said that there were Khamnigans in Russia, Mongolia (mostly in the *aimags* of Dornod, Selenge, Khentii), and China. They guessed that the Russian Khamnigans must have preserved

their mother tongue best.

2.4.2 Mrs. Luvsangtsereng TSEND-AYUUSH

She identified herself as Luvsangtserengiin Tsend-Ayuush, of the Sharaid clan, the Khamnigan nation [χамниган үндэстэн] [ʃaraet ɔmɔqt^he luβsaŋts^hereŋgi:ŋ ts^hendajø:ɕ].

Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush was born in 1947 in Khargiyastai, north of the Balj Gol River, which is a tributary of the Onon Gol River in Dadal *sum*. She was born by Buryat parents whose previous children all died as infants. She knew that her father was a Khori Buryat and her mother was from Barguzin in Buryatia, Russia.

Soon after her birth, her parents committed her to a Khamnigan family whose children were all growing up healthy. When the prearranged one year term was over, the Khamnigan family was



Picture 3. Mrs. Luvsangtsereng TSEND-AYUUSH

so attached to her that they refused to return her to her biological parents. While her Buryat parents were demanding her return, her younger siblings were born and all grew up healthy. At last, her Buryat parents had to accept the status quo. Both her adoptive parents were also from somewhere in Russia.

Upon her graduation from the State College of Teachers (today's Mongolian State University of Education), Ulaanbaatar, she taught Mongolian language and literature in high schools of Khalkha *sums* of Khentii *aimag* for almost 30 years. She retired 10 years ago and returned to the native place of her spouse, Dadal *sum*. Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush assumed her language must have been assimilated to the Khalkha. Her husband, a retired high school teacher, was a Buryat. They had two children and five grandchildren. Their children spoke Khalkha.

Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush said she was one of the consultants of Prof. Yu. Munkh-Amgalan and Mr. Andrew Shimunek in their fieldwork study in July of 2006.

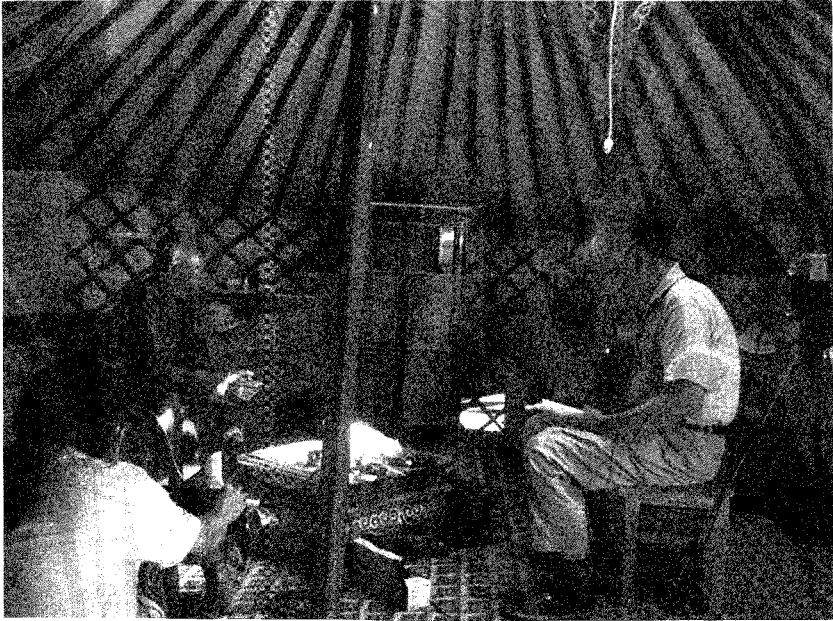
Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush worked with us from 17:10 to 19:00 on July 9, from 11:30 to 17:10 on July 10, 2007. She gave answers for 1,047 words, 345 conversational expressions, and 384 sentences and constructions for grammatical structure.

2.4.3 Mrs. Chultem DARKHAA

Our consultant identified herself as Chultemiing Darkhaa, Baruun Khuuchai clan, Khamnigan nation [χamniβaŋ ʌndʊstəŋ parɔ:n χɔ:tshʌe ɔmɔkqt^hɛ ts^hʌlt^hemi:ŋ tarq^ha:].²⁾

Mrs. Darkhaa was born in 1945 to a Buryat family in a place called Galttai in Dadal *sum*. She was adopted by a Khamnigan family when she was three months old. Her husband is also a Khamnigan. They married through bride kidnapping, a tradition of the Khamnigans of the old days. They had 10 children and 28

2) Her clan was introduced as Uliankhai in Shimunek (2006: 31).



Picture 4. Mrs. DARKHAA with team

grandchildren. She has never been out of Dadal *sum*. She said that she was one of the consultants of Prof. Yu. Munkh-Amgalan and Mr. Shimunek in summer of 2006.

We got 876 words and 151 conversational expressions from Mrs. Darkhaa. We recorded her life story, explanation on animal husbandry, climate change of Dal *sum*, etc. Our research started from 10:00 and lasted until 17:00 on July 11, 2007 from which point Mrs. Darkhaa became too tired to continue to participate to our research.

3

Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

3.1 Phonological description¹⁾

As mentioned above, Mrs. Tsetsegmaa's replies to our questions are the main data for linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan in this book. When possible and necessary, speeches of Dadal *sum* consultants Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush and Mrs. Darkhaa are also taken into consideration.

3.1.1 Vowels

Six short vowels /a/, /o/, /u/, /ə/, /ü/, /i/, seven long vowels /aa/, /oo/, /uu/, /əə/, /üü/, /ee/, /ii/, and four diphthongs /ay/, /oy/, /uy/, /üy/ are tentatively proposed as vowel phonemes.

The best description on Khamnigan vowel /a/ might be a near open, near back, unrounded vowel. However, it is rounded very

1) A paper of the same topic was read in Yu (2010a) in Korean at the 2010 Autumn meeting (2010.9.11) of The Korean Association for Central Asian Studies, then revised and rewritten in English.

often as [o] or [u] in many words and sentences, but the context is not so clear.

Vowel /o/ is an open-mid rounded back vowel which is nearest to the IPA's [ɔ].

Vowel /u/ is a near-close rounded back vowel which is nearest to the IPA's [ɯ].

Vowel /ü/ in this book is a close central rounded vowel which is nearest to the IPA's [ɥ].

In most cases the short vowel /ə/ corresponds to the vowels which are transcribed as /e/ in Written Mongolian and Middle Mongolian. It corresponds to the vowels which are usually written as /ə/ both in Khalkha and Buryat.²⁾

There are vowel [e] and [i], which are allophones of Khalkha /e/, in the speech of our consultant. They are transcribed as /e/ in this book, until a better solution is found.

eklэхэ [ik^hlэхэ/juk^hlэхэ] # to begin (Kh. эхлэх; Бу. эхилхэ; WM ekilekü)

des daraa [tis tara:] # order (Kh. дэс дараа; Бу. (Cognate word unavailable); WM des daray-a)

ekner nükür [эк^hner нүк^hүр/ek^hner нүк^hүр] # wife and husband, spouse

eklэд [ik^hlэт] # in the beginning, first (Kh. эхлээд; Бу. эхилээд; WM ekileged)

2) The Khalkha vowel which is represented by the letter э usually corresponds to the vowel /e/, which has [e] and [i] as allophones. The Buryat vowel which is represented by the same letter э usually corresponds to the vowel /ə/, which has [ə] and [e] as allophones. Yu (2004: 112) regarded the (Aga) Khori Buryat [ə] as the free variant of [e], and both of them as the allophones of the phoneme /e/. Bayinmend (白音門德, 2004: 130-133) who did the research on Khori Buryat in the same ASK REAL fieldwork study found the Buryat э as the mid-high, middle, unrounded vowel (中高, 央, 展唇元音) not only in the first syllable (F1 452, F2 1557), but also in the second (F1 447, F2 1396), and other syllables as well.

eküün [ik^hu:ŋ] # puckery, astringent (Kh. эхүүн; Bu. эхүүн³⁾;
WM ekegün)

emčilək [emtɕ^hilək^h/emtilək^h] # to treat, to doctor (Kh. эмчлэх;
Bu. эмшэлхэ; WM emčilekü)

emtilək [emtɕ^hilək^h/emtilək^h] # to treat, to doctor (Kh. эмчлэх;
Bu. эмшэлхэ; WM emčilekü)

əbderk [əbderk] # to get broken, to be damaged (Kh. эвдрэх;
Bu. эбдэрхэ; WM ebderekü)

Vowel [ə] appears occasionally. It is not a allophone of any Khamnigan basic vowel but a allophone of Khalkha /ə/ and, is evidence of the Khalkha influence. It is transcribed as /ö/ until a better solution is found.

Short vowels

	Front	Central	Back
Close	i	ü	u
Mid	(e)	ə(ö)	o
Open			a

Long vowels /ee/ and /əə/ are hypothesized as two different phonemes until future research finds examples against the presumption of this paper.

There is room for further consideration of [e:] and [ɛ:], which are treated as allophones of long vowel /ee/ in many Khamnigan words. These vowels may be the allophone of diphthong /ay/, /əy/, /oy/, etc., especially in word-final syllables. For example,

bulingyərtee [pəlɪŋgɛrt^hɛ:] # turbid, cloudy (Kh. булингартай)

sonirkoltee [sɔɪrɪk^hɔlt^hɛ:] # interesting (Kh. сонирхолтой)

əmügtee [əmügt^hɛ:] # woman, female

3) эхүүн ‘едкий, кислый’ in Tsydenjarov (Цыденжапов, 1991: 138) seems to be an error of эхүүн.

Long vowels

	Front	Central	Back
Close	ii	üü	uu
Mid	ee	əə(öö)	oo
Open			aa

Ascending diphthongs are presumed not to be present. There is room for further consideration of [y:], a close front rounded long vowel, which is regarded not as an allophone of a certain long vowel but as an allophone of diphthong /üy/ in this book, especially in the word-first syllables.

Diphthongs

	Front	Central	Back
Close		üy	uy
Mid		(əy)	oy
Open			ay

3.1.2 Consonants

Labial consonants /b/, /p/, /w/, /m/, dental-alveolar consonants /d/, /t/, /n/, /r/, /l(ɬ)/, alveolar consonants /j/, /c/, /s/, alveolar-palatal consonants /ʃ/, /č/, /š/, palatal consonant /y/, velar consonants /g/, /k/, /x/, /ŋ/ are proposed as consonant phonemes, also tentatively. Gruntov (Грунтов, 2010: 2-3)'s contrast of “Strong : Weak (твердость-мягкость) consonants”, that is “Normal : Palatalized consonants” seems not necessary to presume in the speeches of our consultant.

/b/, /d/, /g/, /j/, /ʃ/ represent unaspirated voiceless consonants while /p/, /t/, /k/, /c/, /č/ represent aspirated voiceless consonants.

Consonant /r/ is realized mostly as flap [ɾ]. However, it alternates with the trill [r] in the same phonological contexts. These two may be regarded as free variants of each other. Flap consonant is chosen as a phoneme but it is transcribed as /r/ for convenience. It does not occur at a word's initial position.

Voiceless dental-alveolar lateral fricative /ɬ/ appears only once at the initial position of a Tibetan loan word. It actually was one of two words which might have been pronounced with the [ɬ] among the 2,700 words in the questionnaire. The other question was the word for a *lama*, but our consultant chose the word /gələn/ instead.

ɬagba garigi [ɬaɣβa qariɣi] # Wednesday

As Shimunek (2006: 33) pointed out, the dental-alveolar lateral consonant is pronounced mostly as approximant[l], very seldom as voiced[ɮ] or voiceless[ɬ] fricatives, which are prevalent in Khalkha.

In the three words below, forms with initial [χ] alternate with forms without initial [χ]. The word for 'palm' is the only form among those three which had Middle Monolian initial *h*-. Therefore, it would be proper to say that the relic of Middle Mongolian *h*- does not exist in this dialect now.

xagšixa [χakɕixǎ/akɕixǎ] # to contract, to shrink (Kh. arших; Bu. arшаха; WM aɣsiqu)

xalgu~algu [a:lɣω/χalɣω] # palm (Kh. алга; Bu. альган; WM alayan; MM (SH, HYYY) halaγan)

xamalalt [χamalǎlt^h/amalǎlt^h] # promise (Kh. амлалт; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM amalalta)

There are only two words with initial [w]. One is a Chinese loan word, and the other is a compound word with a Chinese loan word and a native Mongolian word. Stop [p] alternates with fricative [w] when it is used as a word for 'pot'. When used as a word for 'roof tile', our consultant pronounced the initial consonant as a stop sound.

- waara~baara # pot (< 瓦兒[wǎr] ‘rooftile’)
 waaran ədləl # ceramics (Kh.) (< Ch. 瓦兒[wǎr] ‘roof tile’ + -n
 ‘nominal suffix’ + Mo. ədləl ‘goods, ware’
 baara # roof tile (< 瓦兒[wǎr] ‘roof tile’)

Consonant table

Classification	Labial	Dental- Alveolar	Alveolar	Alveolar- Palatal	Palatal	Velar
Stop	b, p	d, t				g, k
Affricate			j, c	ǰ, č		
Fricative	(w)	(ʈ)	s	š		x
Nasal	m	n				ŋ
Flap		r				
Glide					y	
Approximant		l				

3.1.3 Diachronic and synchronic considerations

3.1.3.1 Written Mongolian *i*

As previous studies have mentioned, Written Mongolian *i* of the initial syllable is mostly maintained in Khamnigan. For example,

čınara # quality (Kh. чанар; Бу. шанар; WM činar)

iruul # bottom (Kh. ёроол; Бу. оёор; WM iruγal/iruγar)

nisə # snivel (Kh. нус; Бу. нюһа; WM nisu)

However, there are some words in which the vowel *i* of the initial syllable has been completely assimilated to the vowel of the following syllable. There are also some words which have both assimilated form and unassimilated form. In those cases, some words are more similar to the Khalkha in their phonological forms

while some other words are more similar to the Buryat forms. Also there are some words which resemble the Khalkha and the Buryat form together.

əsgirwaa~isgirəə [əskirwa:/iskirə:] # whistle (Kh. исгэрээ; Bu. эшхэрээн; WM iskirege)

gyalaltaku [kjalaltʰakʰɔ] # to sparkle, to glitter, to gleam (Kh. гялалзах; Bu. гилалзаха; WM gilaɮaɮu)

kəjagaar # border, frontier, boundary (Kh. хязгаар; Bu. хизаар; WM kiɮaɮar)

ɟirgaa~jurgaa # six (Kh. зургаа; Bu. зургаа; WM ɟirɣuɣan)

kürəə # a saw (Kh. хөрөө; Bu. хюрөө; WM kirüge);

kimda~kyamda~kyamd [kʰimdə/kʰjamdä/kʰjamt] # cheap (Kh. хямд; Bu. хямда; WM kimda)

miŋgu~myəŋga~myaŋga # a thousand (Kh. мянга; Bu. мянга; WM miŋɣ-a)

maxa~maxa~myka~myəka # meat, flesh (Kh. мах; Bu. мяха; WM miq-a)

nəgə # one (Kh. нэг; Bu. нэгэ; WM nige)

ʃarsan myəka # roast meat (Kh. шарсан мах; Bu. шарahan мяхан; WM siraɣsan miq-a)

ʃibuu~ʃubuu # bird (Kh. шувуу; Bu. шубуу; WM sibaɣu)

ilaa # fly (Kh. ялаа; Bu. илаahan; WM ilaɣan), however yalaanee üt for maggot

Among the various phonological changes, *i* > *ya/yə* is more similar to those of Khalkha in almost all cases. Examples below cover almost all the cases found in the 2,800 words that our consultant pronounced.

yalagdul # defeat (Kh. ялагдал; Bu. илагдал; WM ilagdal)

yalaltu # victory (Kh. ялалт; Bu. илалта; WM ilalta)

yalaxa # to win, to defeat (Kh. ялах; Bu. илаха; WM ilaɮu)

yalgaxa # to separate, to distinguish (Kh. ялгах; Bu. илгах; WM ilɣaɮu)

yaljarxa # to rot, to decay (Kh. ялзрах; Bu. илзарха; WM ilɟaraɮu)

yamaa # goat (Kh. ямаа; Bu. ямаа; WM imaγ-a; MM ima'ad (SH, plural))

yamaḡta # always (Kh. ямагт; Bu. имагта; WM imaγta)

There are some Khamnigan words with initial [i] when the cognate words of Written Mongolian, Khalkha, and Buryat have vowels other than /i/. Some of them may be understood as one of the Khalkha phenomena: That is /e/ > [i] in the initial syllable. However, the others are not related to this phenomenon. Those peculiar [i] are found mostly after the affricate consonants, occasionally after the nasal consonants,

čidünjə [tʃ^hidundzə] # match (< Ch. 取燈子[qǔdēngzi]) (Kh. чүдэнз; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM čüdenḡje)

čirlə (~šaril) [tʃ^hirlə/čeril] # corpse, holy relics (< Sa. śarīra corpse, holy relics) (Kh. шарил; Bu. Cognate word unavailable; WM šaril)

jībšuurku~jübšəarkə # to approve, to approve, to agree to (Kh. зөвшөөрөх; Bu. зүвшөөрхэ; WM jöbsiyerkü)

jjīluurtee # tough (meat) (Kh. зажлууртай; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM jajiluγurtai)

jjīlxa # to chew (Kh. зажлах; Bu. жажалха; WM jajilqu)

mitraal # material (< Ru. материа́л) (Kh. материал; Bu. материал; WM matyeriyal)

šīŋkay (~siŋkay~šaŋkay~saŋkay⁴⁾ # China, Chinese (Kh. Шанхай; Bu. Шанхай; WM šangqai)

šita (~šata) # ladder (Kh. шат; Bu. шата; WM šatun)

The Written Mongolian vowel /i/ of the non-initial syllables is realized as [jə]~[je] in some Khamnigan words. Some words have

4) Chinese city (上海[shànghǎi]). Consultant used to say [saŋk^haj] ~[čaŋk^haj]~[čeŋk^haj] for Chinese and China. She had also “kyatad [k^hjat^hät]”, a regular Mongolian word for ‘China’ and ‘Chinese’. She called Korea *solongos*, a regular Mongolian word for ‘Korea’ and ‘Korean’. As for Japan and Japanese, she used the word *samuray*.

both forms, that is, a form with the non-initial [i] and another form with [jə]~[je] at the same time. Examples below cover almost all cases in the data.

- anyəxu # to close the eyes (Kh. аних Бу. аниха WM aniqu)
 bakye (~baki) [pak^hi/pakje] # pincers (Kh. бахь; Бу. (Cognate word unavailable); WM baki)
 baryəxu (~bariyəxu) # to build (Kh. барих; Бу. бариха; WM bariqu)⁵⁾
 bolyəxo # to stop, to give up (Kh. болих; Бу. болихо; WM boliqu)
 gišgyəxə (~gišgexə) # to step, to tread (Kh. гишгэх; Бу. гэшхэхэ; WM giškikü)
 goryəxə (~gorixə) # stream (Kh. горхи; Бу. горхо; WM γorɪq-a/γorɪq-a)
 kabyəɾəɣ # rib (Kh. хавирга; Бу. хабирга; WM qabirγ-a)
 kibyəkə [kibjəkə] # to ruminate (Kh. хивэх; Бу. хивэхэ; WM kibekü)
 kolyəxo~xolyəxo # to mix (Kh. холих; Бу. холихо; WM qoliqu)
 solyəkə # to change (Kh. солих; Бу. холихо; WM soliqu)
 soribyə (~soribi) # scar (Kh. сорви~сорив; Бу. хорби~хорьбо; WM sorbi)
 tabyəxu # to put, to place (Kh. тавих; Бу. табиха; WM talbiqu)
 tanyəxu # to know (Kh. таних; Бу. таниха; WM taniqu)
 təbiryəkə~teberyəxə # to embrace, to hold in the arms (Kh. тэврэх; Бу. тэбэрихэ; WM teberikü)
 xabyəɾɣan sara (~kabirɣan sara) # crescent moon, new moon (Kh. хавирган сар; Бу. (Cognate word unavailable); WM qabirɣan sara)

Syllable final [i] is maintained in almost all cases. Thus it is similar to Buryat in which unstressed short vowels including /i/ are relatively well preserved, and different from Khalkha in which

5) It is /barixu/ in 'to restrain, to hold'. (Kh. барих; Бу. бариха; WM bariqu)

/i/ has been either dropped or reduced to soft sign (зөлөөний тэмдэг, ь) in most cases. For example,

bəri # bride, daughter in law (Kh. бэр; Bu. бэри; WM beri)

dari # gun powder (Kh. дарь; Bu. дари; WM dari)

düči # forty (Kh. дөч; Bu. дүшэ; WM döči)

surguuli # school (Kh. сургууль; Bu. хургуули; WM surγaγuli)

suuri # basis (Kh. суурь; Bu. хуури; WM saγuri)

3.1.3.2 Written Mongolian *k*, *q* and Khamnigan /k/, /x/

Written Mongolian *k* and *q* are maintained as stop consonants in most cases. Gantogtokh (Гантогтох, 1988: 1631) maintained that the [k] instead of /x/ in [-back] vowel words was one of the special features of Khamnigan as distinct from the other Buryat dialects. However, in our consultant's speech, both the [+back] and [-back] vowel words have the stop /k/. Its allophones [k^h] and [q^h] are in complementary distribution, [k^h] in [-back] vowel words and [q^h] in [+back] vowel words, thus it is transcribed as /k/ in this book.

kadaas [q^hata:s] # nail (Kh. хадаас; Bu. хадаахан; WM qadaγasu)

komool [q^hэмэ:l] # horse dung (Kh. хомоол; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM qomool)

kusaka [q^həsak^ha] # to shave (Kh. хусах; Bu. хюһаха; WM qusuqu)

kələkə [k^hələk^hə] # to say, to speak, to tell (Kh. хэлэх; Bu. хэлэхэ; WM kelekü)

küskə [k^husk^hə] # to want (Kh. хүсэх; Bu. хүсэхэ; WM küsekü)

kibyəkə # to ruminate (Kh. хивэх; Bu. хивэхэ; WM kibekü)

The aspirated voiceless velar consonant of the same word is sometimes pronounced as a stop and sometimes as a fricative both in [+back] and [-back] vowel words. For example,

xələlцээр~kələlцээр # negotiation

xüči~küči # power

xügšin xün~kügšin kün # old person
 xülüsülкә # to employ
 xüüхән karaa # pupil of the eye

The fact that 410 words of the data start with the /k/ and 80 words with /x/ suggests that the fricativization started not too long ago in Khamnigan, which may also mean that the influence of Khalkha or Buryat on Khamnigan started not too long ago, either.

Although there are only few examples, Written Mongolian /k/ or /q/ are realized as /g/ occasionally. As for /gokirlo/ (harm, damage, loss), it may be explained as the de-aspiration of the initial /k/ by the influence of the aspirated /k/ of the second syllable. However, there is no element in /gilbar/ which may cause the initial de-aspiration. The words for ‘whistle’, ‘to shout’, and ‘to step, to tread’ are similar to the non-aspirated consonants in Khalkha words.

gilbar [kilpär] # simple, easy (Kh. хялбар; Бу. хилбар; WM kilbar)

gokirlo [qɔk^hirɮɔ] # harm, damage, loss (Kh. хохирол; Бу. хохирол; WM qokiral)

əsgirwaa~isgirəə [əskirwa:/iskirə:] # whistle (Kh. исгэрээ; Бу. эшхэрээн; WM iskirege)

kadgiraxa to shout, to yell (Kh. хашгирах; Бу. хашхарха; WM qaškiraqu)

gišgyəxə (~gišgexə) # to step, to tread (Kh. гишгэх; Бу. гəшхэхэ; WM giškikü)

3.1.3.3 Written Mongolian *d*

Written Mongolian *d* is realized as /d/(=[t]) in Khamnigan almost all the time. However, it is realized as /s/ occasionally. Some words have both /d/ and /s/ types. Context seems to mostly occur in syllable final (including word final) position but in the cases of ‘first’ and ‘day after tomorrow’ it is the onset consonant of the syllable. There is a similar phenomenon in Buryat, but [s] is not

found exactly in the same position. There is no matching example in Gantogtokh (Гантогтох, 1988)'s Buryat dialect dictionary which has 6,000 entries.

- bügs (~bügüd) # all (Kh. бүгд; Bu. бүгэдэ; WM bügüde)
 әbүsәkә # to be ill (Kh. өвдөх; Bu. үбдэхэ; WM ebedkü)
 casaxa # to be full (in one's stomach) (Kh. цадах; Bu. садах; WM čadqu)
 gajaas xün # foreigner (Kh. гадаад хүн; Bu. гадаадын хүн; WM γadaγadu kümün)
 magasgüy # probably (Kh. магадгүй; Bu. магадгүй; WM maγad ügei)
 bayar naasam [paǰär na:säm] # festival (Kh. баяр наадам; Bu. [баяр] наадан; WM bayar naγadam)
 naasxa # to play (Kh. наадах; Bu. наадаха; WM naγadqu)
 nәgәsүgәär~nәgәdүgәär # first (Kh. нэгдүгээр; Bu. нэгэдэгээр; WM nigedüger)
 нүгәәсәр # the day after tomorrow (Kh. нөгөөдөр; Bu. нүгөөдэр; WM nögüge edür/nögügedür)
 osgon # the youngest child (Kh. отгон; Bu. одхон; WM odqan)
 kugas # half (Kh. хагас; Bu. хахад; WM qaγas)
 oros # Russia (Kh. орос; Bu. ород; WM oros)

Written Mongolian *d* is realized as *j* (= [ts]) in Khamnigan occasionally. For example:

- bojol [pətɔl, pɔɕɔl] # thought, idea, opinion (Kh. бодол; Bu. бодол; WM bodol)
 gajaas xün # foreigner (Kh. гадаад хүн; Bu. гадаадын хүн; WM γadaγadu kümün)
 kajuura [q^haɕwə:ra] # sickle, scythe (Kh. хадуур; Bu. хажуур 'scythe', хадуур 'sickle'; WM qaduγur 'sickle')

3.1.3.4 Written Mongolian *s*

Written Mongolian *s* is realized mostly as /s/, and occasionally as /š/ as in Khalkha. Written Mongolian #*si*# is realized mostly as

#šV#, which means /s/ is palatalized and /i/ is assimilated to the vowel in the following syllable. Occasionally /i/ is assimilated to the vowel in the following syllable without palatalizing /s/. Some words have both palatalized and unpalatalized forms.

dəəlsüülk [tə:lsɯ:lk^h] # to improve (Kh. дээшлүүлх; Bu. дээшэлүүлхэ; WM degegsilegülkü)

samarga~ (šamarga) [çamarga/samarga] # storm, snowstorm, blizzard (Kh. шамарага; Bu. шамарга; WM simarγ-a)

sar jügii # wasp (Kh. шар зөгий; Bu. шара зүгы; WM sir-a jögei)

sarsan myəka (~šarsan myəka) # roast meat (Kh. шарсан мах; Bu. шарахан мяхан; WM sirayсан miq-a)

soxoy # lime (Kh. шохой; Bu. шохой; WM siqui)

suluun šugam (~šuluun šugam) # straight line (Kh. шулуун шугам; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM siluγun siγum)

suuda # soon (Kh. шууд; Bu. шууд; WM siγud)

süləgə # poem, poetry (Kh. шүлэг; Bu. шүлэг; WM silüg)

süləs~sülüs # saliva (Kh. шүлс; Bu. шүлхэ; WM silüs)

sürmäs # sinew (Kh. шөрмөс; Bu. шүрбэхэн; WM sirbüsü)

süüdär # dew (Kh. шүүдэр; Bu. шүүдэр; WM sigüderi)⁶⁾

süükə # to judge, to try (Kh. шүүх; Bu. шүүхэ; WM sigükü)

sütüləgə # piety, faith, worship, religion (Kh. шүтлэг; Bu. шүтэлгэ; WM sitülge)

Although there are only three examples, Written Mongolian /s/ corresponds to Khamnigan /c/(= [t^h]) and /č/(= [t^h]).

cücə~cüsə # gall bladder (Kh. цөс; Bu. хүлхэ; WM čösö~sösö)

čiluun~čuluun [t^hilɔ:ŋ/t^hɔlɔ:ŋ] # straight (Kh. шулуун; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable) WM siluγun)

čumuul~tyəmuul [t^hɔmɔ:l/t^hjəmɔ:l] # mosquito (Kh. шумуул; Bu. шумуул; WM simaγul~simuγul)

In the word for ‘mosquito’, /t-/ as well as č corresponds to

6) As a result, it becomes synonymous with the word süüdär # shade, shadow (Kh. сүүдэр; Bu. хүүдэр; WM següder).

Written Mongolian /s/. There is one more example of Khamnigan /t/ which corresponds to Written Mongolian /s/. However, it might be a simple error of our consultant.
 ültägэлэҗ~үртэгэлэҗ [ult^hägäləҗə, urt^hgäləҗ] # hunger, fasting
 (Kh. өлсгөлөн; Бу. үлэсхэлэн; WM ölüsküleng)

3.1.3.5 Written Mongolian č

Written Mongolian č is realized mostly as /c/(=t^h)/ or /č(=t^h)/, and occasionally as /š/(=ç). In this respect, Khamnigan is more like Khalkha where it is realized as ц(=t^h) or ч(=t^h). It is realized as c(=/s/) or ш(=ç~ʃ) in Buryat. Examples below are Khamnigan /s/ and /š/ which correspond to Written Mongolian č. Some /s/ coexist with /c/(=t^h) in Khamnigan.

Khamnigan words for ‘maternal uncle~mother’s brother’ and ‘maternal aunt~mother’s sister’ are very similar to certain Buryat kinship terms phonologically but the meanings are very different from each other. It might be the case that our consultant was confused in the kinship terms. In Buryat *нарца* means ‘maternal grandfather’ and *нарасхай/нарца ахай* means not ‘wife of maternal uncle’, but ‘maternal uncle’. Consultant used the morpheme *nagac* in the compound words for maternal relatives, which is exactly same with the Khalkha kinship terms phonologically. For example:

- nagac бэригэн # wife of mother’s brother
- nagac эцэг~nagac эцгэ # mother’s father
- nagac эхэ # mother’s mother
- nagac хүргэн аха # husband of mother’s sister

For a word ‘shirt’, /samca/ and /camca/ coexist. The former is a mixture of Buryat and Khalkha types, while the latter is of Khalkha type. Also for a word meaning ‘to pierce’ Buryat and Khalkha types coexist. Considering the closely related life of the Khamnigans to the Buryats, influence of the Buryat types seems rather insignificant, and far weaker than the influence of the Khalkha types. The Buryat influence seems to have been great in

earlier days, but it is replaced by Khalkha influence now.

nagsa # maternal uncle (Kh. нагац ах; Bu. нагса ахай; WM nagaču)

nagsaxay # maternal aunt (Kh. нагац эгч; Bu. нагса абгай; WM nagaču egeči)

samca~camca # shirt (Kh. цамц; Bu. самса; WM čamča)

soolxo~čoolxo # to pierce (Kh. цоолох; Bu. соолохо; WM čoɣolqu)

šigəəgəə # soon (Kh. чигээрээ; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM čig-iyer 'straight')

šiidəŋ # electric lamp (< Ch. 氣燈[qìdēng]) (Kh. чийдэн; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM čiideng)

šiiŋnee ulaan korkoy # earthworm (Kh. чийгийн улаан хорхой; Bu. шииг 'moisture'; WM čigig-ün qoruqai 'earth worm')

šinaxa~činaxa # to boil (Kh. чанах; Bu. шанаха; WM činaqu)

šukula~čukula # important (Kh. чухал; Bu. шухала; WM čiqula)

xaši šeluu~kaši čuluu # jade (Kh. хас чулуу; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM qas čilaγu)

Some examples of Khamnigan /t/(=[t^h]) which correspond to Written Mongolian č are also found. Some words have both /č-/ and /t-/ type forms. As Yu (2007: 23-24) enumerated quoting previous studies, Written Mongolian and Middle Mongolian č is realized as /t/ in Oirad Mongolian dialects (Zakhchin, Torguud, Ööld, Uriankhai, Myangad, Bayd, Khoton, Dörvöd), Eastern Khalkha dialect, and some Inner Mongolian dialects (Siluγun köke banner, Darqan, Eastern Sünid, Alashan). For example,

dotortee kubtas [tət^hɔrt^hɛ: k^huptəs] # lined garments (Kh. (дотортой) хувцас; Bu. (дотортой) хубсага; WM (doturtai) qubčasu)⁷⁾

butalaxa [pət^həɫaxa] # to boil (intransitive) (Kh. буцлах; Bu.

7) It is the same in /dəəgüür xubtas/[tə:γu:r xəpt^has] # upper garment. When it is simply 'clothes, garment', it was pronounced as /kubcas/.

- бусалха; WM bučalqu)
 butalgaха [pət^həlgaχa] # to boil (transitive) (Kh. буцалгах; Bu. бусалгаха; WM bučalγaqu)
 гүйтэј ооко [küyt^hэдэ ɔtɕ^hэк^hɔ] # to overtake, to catch up with
 (Kh. гүйцэж очих; Bu. гүйсэж ошохо; WM güičeјü očiqu)
 emtilək [emtɕ^hi:lək^h/emt^hi:lək^h] # to treat, to doctor (Kh. эмчлэх; Bu. эмшэлэх; WM emčilekü)⁸⁾
 sarabčutee malagay~sarabdyüte malagay # сар⁹⁾ (Kh. саравчтай малгај; Bu. харабша малгај; WM sarabčitai malaγai)

3.1.3.6 Written Mongolian *ǰ*

Written Mongolian *ǰ* is realized mostly as a dental-alveolar unaspirated voiceless affricate /j/(=[ts]) or an alveolar-palatal unaspirated voiceless /j/(=[tɕ]) in Khamnigan, thus showing no difference from Khalkha. However, there appear [d] or [t] occasionally at the place of Written Mongolian *ǰ*, although they might be simple pronunciation errors of our consultant.

- dorilogo~jorilogo [tɕirilɔkɔ~tsɕirilɔkɔ] # purpose, goal (Kh. зорилго; Bu. зорилго; WM jorilγ-a)
 gyalaltaku [kjalalt^hak^hɔ] # to shine, to glitter (Kh. гялалзах; Bu. гилалзаха; WM gilaljaqu)

3.1.3.7 Written Mongolian *š*

Written Mongolian *š* is realized as /š/ in Khamnigan in almost all

8) ‘Medicine’ was not /em/ but [əmə]~[əm], and ‘doctor’ was not /emč(i)/ but /əməč(i)/, /domči/. Doerfer (1985: 70) presented *adirga* ‘stallion’, *ati* ‘grandson’, *gutin* ‘30’, *diloga* ‘rein’, *gudigē* ‘stomach (of animal)’ as examples of Khamnigan words with ti/di. Our consultant answered three of them with the same words. All three were pronounced as affricate consonants (ajarogo~ajargan ‘stallion’; ači ‘grandson’, guči ‘30’).

9) Word for ‘cow shed, cattle pen’ is sarabči [saraptɕi]. Therefore the -dy- part may have been a simple pronunciation error of our consultant.

cases. It is realized as [d] or [č] occasionally.

kadgiraxa # to shout, to yell (Kh. хашгирах; Bu. хашхарха; WM qaškiraqu)

čirlə~šaril [tʰirlə/čeril] corpse, holy relics (< Sa. śarīra corpse, holy relics) (Kh. шарил; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM šaril)

3.1.3.8 Unstressed non-initial short vowels and vowel addition

As previous studies have properly pointed out, unstressed non-initial vowels are relatively well preserved in Khamnigan. Furthermore, sometimes vowels, which are not found in Written Mongolian or neighbor dialects, are added. For example:

arago # means, method, way (Kh. арга [arāk]; Bu. арга; WM arγ-a)

činara # quality (Kh. чанар; Bu. шанар; WM činar)

baatura # hero (Kh. баатар; Bu. баатар; WM baγatur)

bačiməduu~bačimγəduu # impatient, hasty, flustered, worried, confused (Kh. бачимдуу; Bu. башамдуулха 'to push, to press'; WM bačimdaγu 'pressing, anxious')

бахалажуура [paxalaxwɔ:rä] # pharynx (Kh. багалзуур; Bu. бахалзуур~багалзуур; WM baγaljaγur)

bəriγən [pəriγəŋ/pərɔɲiŋ] # elder brother's wife (Kh. бэргэн; Bu. бэргэн~бэригэн; WM bergen)

dabasaga # (urinary) bladder (Kh. давсар; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable, сууха) WM dabasaγ~dabusang)

gajura # place (Kh. газар; Bu. газар; WM γajar)

gajuru # earth, land, ground (Kh. газар; Bu. газар; WM γajar)

nulimas # tear (Kh. нулимс/нулмис; Bu. нёлбоһон; WM nilbusu)

süləgə # poem, poetry (Kh. шүлэг; Bu. шүлэг; WM silüg)

However, it does not mean that unstressed non-initial short vowels are always maintained. For example Written Mongolian allomorphs -kü/-qu, which express the verbal noun future/

imperfective, is realized with final vowel as -ka/-kə/-ko/-ku/-kü or -xa/-xə/-xo/-xu/-xü similarly to those of Buryat. They are realized also without final vowel as those of Khalkha, thus as -x, -k. For example:

- ajillaха # to work (Kh. ажиллах; Ву. ажаллаха; WM)
 abxu # to take (Kh. авах; Ву. абаха; WM abqu)
 болохо # to become (Kh. болох; Ву. болохо; WM)
 бүгүлэхэ # to block up (Kh. бөглөх; Ву. бүглэхэ; WM)
 бүжиглэхэ # to dance (Kh. бүжиглэх; Ву. бүжэглэхэ; WM)
 kocoroko # to be left behind (Kh. хоцорох; Ву. хосорхо; WM)
 noyr kürkü # to feel sleepy (Kh. нойр хүрэх; Ву. нойр хүрэхэ;
 WM noyr kürkü)
 agtulux # to geld, to castrate (Kh. агтлах; Ву. агталха; WM)
 бэлтгэх # to prepare (Kh. бэлтгэх; Ву. бэлдэхэ; WM)
 эбдерк # to get broken, to be damaged (Kh. эвдрэх; Ву.
 эбдэрхэ; WM ebderekü)
 гомдох # to complain (Kh. гомдох; Ву. гомдохо; WM
 yomdaqy)

3.1.3.9 Written Mongolian *ng* before *n*

Written Mongolian *ng* before *n* is maintained principally as /ŋ/ in Khamnigan. In Khalkha, it appears as /g/. Occasionally it is realized as [g], as in the word for ‘forehead’. Examples are:

- агнах # to hunt (Kh. агнах; Ву. агнаха; WM ангнаaqu~англаaqu)
 дүгнэхэ # to conclude (Kh. дүгнэх~дүнлэх; Ву. дүгнэхэ; WM
 дүнгнекү~дүngleкү)
 эгнэхэ # to be lined up, to be in a row (Kh. эгнэх; Ву. (Cognate
 word unavailable); WM engnekü)
 жіпнуур # balance, scale (Kh. жигнүүр~жинлүүр; Ву. шэнгүүр
 весы; WM жіngnegür~жіnglegür)
 magnee # forehead (Kh. магнай ‘forehead, vanguard, prime;
 манлай ‘vanguard, prime; Ву. магнай~манлай forehead,
 vanguard, prime; WM mangnai~manglai ‘forhead, vanguard,
 prime’)

3.2 Morphological description

3.2.1 Parts of speech

3.2.1.1 General Introduction

The following parts of speech are identified in the data: noun, adjective, numeral, pronoun, verb, adverb, postposition, particle, interjection.

3.2.1.2 Noun

Number, case, reflexive possessiveness, and personal possessiveness are marked in the nouns. There is no number agreement between any noun and its attribute or predicate. Grammatical gender does not exist in this dialect, as is the case in the whole of the Mongolian languages.

3.2.1.2.1 Number

Plurality is marked by suffixing various plural markers to the base noun. The following plural markers are identified in the data. Semantic differences between the plural markers are unidentifiable.

Plurality markers
-čüüd/-čüüd
-(i)d
-nar
-nuud/-nüüd
-uud/-üüd

- (1) -čüud/-čüüd: Express the collective of people. -čüud for [+back] vowel words, -čüüd for [-back] vowel words.
šinqay (Chinese person)~šinqayčüud (Chinese persons)
əməgteə (woman)~əməgteəčüüd (women)
- (2) -d: When the stem-final is -č, it is -id
suragč (pupil)~suragčid (pupils)
mori (horse)~morid (horses)
- (3) -nar: After some words for person, deity.
bağš (teacher)~bağšnar (teachers)
- (4) -nuud/-nüüd: -nuud for [+back] vowel words, -nüüd for [-back] vowel words.
šibuu (bird)~šibuunuud (birds)
cəcəg (flower)~cəcəgnüüd (flowers)
- (5) -uud/-üüd: -uud for [+back] vowel words, -üüd for [-back] vowel words.
oros kün (Russian person)~oros künüüd (Russian persons)
~orosuud (Russians)
ükür (cattle)~ükürüüd (cattle)

Plurality is also marked by double suffixing of the plural markers.

- (6) mori (horse)~moriduud (horses: mori-d(PL)-uud(PL))
Plurality is not marked when it is already apparent by other means. For example, we have /xoyor/ 'two' and /olon/ 'many' as attributes of the nouns in the constructions below.
 - (7) xoyor mori
two horse
'two horses'
 - (8) olon ulad
many country
'many countries'
- A certain plural marker is unbreakable from its base noun.
- (9) kün (person)~kümüüd (persons)

3.2.1.2.2 Case

The following cases are identified in the data. Case is marked by

suffixing grammatical morphemes to the noun base.

Case	Marker
Nominative (nom)	-∅
Genitive (GEN)	-ee, -n, -iin
Accusative (ACC)	-∅, -iig, -g, -yee
Dative-Locative (DL)	-d (-d/-t)
Ablative (ABL)	-(g)aas (-(g)aas/-(g)əəs/-(g)ees/-(g)oos)
Instrumental (INS)	-aar (-aar/-əər/-oor)
Comitative (COM)	-tee
Directional (DIR)	-(u)ruu (-(ü)rüü, -luu, -lüü)

3.2.1.2.2.1 Nominative

It is the subject of the sentence. It is marked by zero suffixes. (It is not marked by any suffixes.)

- (1) mori dabki-xa
 horse run-VNF
 ‘Horse runs.’
- (2) xoyor kün ir-bə
 two person come-PAS
 ‘Two people came’

3.2.1.2.2.2 Genitive

The genitive case is marked by suffixing #-ee# or #-iin# after noun bases ending in a short vowel or consonant, and #-n#[-ŋ] after a long vowel or diphthong. It is uncertain what decides the choice between #-ee# and #-iin#.

- (1) bagš-ee dæd surguuli
 teacher-GEN upper school
 ‘teacher’s college’
- (2) bagš-iin miny gər tosgon-ee түб-d
 teacher-GEN 1 house village-GEN center-DL

bay-gč̆i

be-VNA

‘My teacher’s house is at the center of the village. (lit. My teacher’s house is one that is in the center of the village.)’

- (3) gaka-y-n myəka
 pig-GEN meat
 ‘pork’

3.2.1.2.2.3 Accusative

The accusative case is marked by suffixing /-iig/ after stems which end with either a short vowel or consonant, or /-g/ after stems ending with a long vowel or diphthong. #-g# in /-iig/ is not necessary when a personal possessive or reflexive possessive suffix is added. Rarely, the Buryat type accusative marker /yee/ is found in the data as in example (4). The accusative case marking is not necessary when the object is indefinite. The accusative case marking is not necessary when the reflexive possessiveness is marked to the object.

Sometimes accusativeness is marked by double suffixing of the accusative markers as in example (2).

- (1) ali xəsəg-iig onilo-bo-č̆i
 which part-ACC aim at-PAS-2
 ‘Which part did you aim at?’
- (2) kaa-g-ii ny ügü-gtii
 front leg-ACC-ACC 3 give-POL
 Give me the front legs (of it), please!
- (3) tər xar üs-tee malgay-g üj-yi
 that black fur-having hat-ACC see-VOL
 ‘Let me take a look at that black fur hat!’
- (4) mori-yee uy-ǰ tabi-č̆ik-əəd yabagan
 horse-ACC tie-CONI put-COM-CONP walking
 yaba-suy
 go-VOL
 ‘Let us tie the horses and go by walk!’

- (5) *sabaŋ alčuur ab-aad ir*
 soap towel take-CONP come
 ‘Bring the towel and soap!’
- (6) *gār-aa nүүр-ээ uгаа-yi*
 hand-REF face-REF wash-VOL
 ‘Let us wash our faces!’

3.2.1.2.2.4 Dative-Locative

The dative and locative cases are marked by the suffix /-d/, and are identical in phonological form. It has an allomorph #-d# and #-t#. Although we do not have enough data on the context of each allomorph, it would be comparable with other Mongolian dialects such as Khalkha, Buryat, and Written Mongolian. That is [-t] after /b-/, /g-/, /r-/, /s-/, [-d] elsewhere. It may be used with the reflexive possessive suffix /-(g)aa/ (-(g)aa, -(g)ээ, -(g)оо).

- (1) *tər бээjiŋ-d amdра-dag*
 he Beijing-DL live-VNH
 ‘He lives in Beijing.’
- (2) *odoo bindər-t suu-ǰ bay-na-bi*
 now Binder-DL live-CONI be-PRE-1
 ‘I am living in Binder *sum* now.’
- (3) *bi bagš(i)-d-aa tosgon-ee-goo tuxay*
 I teacher-DL-REF village-GEN-REF about
yari-ǰ üg-ээ-bi
 speak-CONI give-PAS-1
 ‘I spoke about my village to my teacher.’

3.2.1.2.2.5 Ablative

The ablative case is marked by suffixing /-aas/. It has allomorphs [-(g)aas], [-(g)ээs], [-ees], and -[(g)оos]. Allomorphs are decided by front-back vowel harmony and labial attraction between stem vowels and suffixes. When a stem ends with a long vowel or diphthong, “latent g” appears. The allomorph [-ees] comes after the noun base ending in vowel /i/.

- (1) mori-d oy-goos buca-ǰ ir-bə
horse-PL forest-ABL return-CONI come-PAS
'Horses came back from the forest.'
- (2) nuur-aas oy kürtür gurban cag yaba-xa
lake-ABL forest upto three hour go-VNF
'It takes three hours from the lake to the forest.'
- (3) bi əkənər-əəs-əə jakia ab-aa-bi
I wife-ABL-REF letter take-PAS-1
'I received a letter from my wife.'
- (4) bi jəli-ees cagaan budaa ab-ba-bi
I market-ABL rice take-PAS-1
'I bought rice from the market.'

3.2.1.2.2.6 Instrumental

The instrumental case is marked by suffixing /-(g)aar/ ([-(g)aar]/[-(g)əər]/[-(g)oor]). Allomorphs are decided by front-back vowel harmony and labial attraction between stem vowels and suffixes. When stem ends with long vowel or diphthong, "latent g" appears.

- (1) aba many mod-oor nom-ee širee kii-bə
father 1PL wood-INS book-GEN table make-PAS
'Our father made a table with wood'
- (2) ta ənd yamar əjil-aar ir-əə-t
you here what kind of work-INS come-PAS-2POL
'What for did you come here?'
- (3) tərənee aba übüčün-əər nas bara-bə
his father illness-INS age finish-PAS
'His father died of an illness.'
- (4) bi düü-gəər-əə nəgə takia
I younger brother-INS-REF one chicken
gar-guul-ba-bi
butcher-CM-PAS-1
'I let my younger brother butcher a chicken.'

3.2.1.2.2.7 Comitative

The comitative case is marked by suffixing /-tee/ to the noun base.

- (1) bi anda-tee-gaa kamt nom u᠋ᠯᠰi-ba-bi
 I friend-COM-REF together book read-PAS-1
 ‘I read book with a friend of mine.’
- (2) bi əkənər-tee-gaa kamt jakia u᠋ᠯᠰi-aa-bi
 I wife-COM-REF together letter read-PAS-1
 ‘I read a letter together with my wife.’

3.2.1.2.2.8 Directional

The directional case is marked by suffixing /-(u)ruu/ to the noun base. When a stem ends with a consonant, “latent u” appears. Considering the directional allomorph [-luu], [-ürüü] appears after the pronouns. There must be nominal directional case allomorph [-luu], [-lüü], or [-(u)rüü], although they are not found after the noun base in the data.

- (1) bidnuus gol-uruu yaba-na karin tanuus
 we river-DIR go-PRE however you(PL)
 uul-uruu yaba-aareegtii
 mountain-DIR go-POL
 ‘We will go to the river. You go to the mountain.’
- (2) jagas bari-xaar gol-uruu yaba-xa-mug
 fish catch-AIM river-DIR go-VNF-INT
 dalay-ruu yaba-xa-mug
 sea-DIR go-VNF-INT
 ‘Do you go to the river or to sea to catch fishes?’
- (3) maanuus tanar-luu il jakidal yabuul-ka-bid
 we you(PL)-DIR open letter send-VNF-1PL
 ‘We will send you a postcard.’

3.2.1.2.3 Reflexive possessive

Reflexive possessiveness is marked by suffixing /-(g)aa/ after the case marker. Thus it is not marked on nouns in the nominative case. The suffix has allomorphs [-(g)aa:], [-(g)əə], and [-(g)oo].

- (1) gar-aa nüür-əə ugaa-yi
 hand-REF face-REF wash-VOL
 ‘Let us wash our faces!’

- (2) mori-d-oo xar-aareegtii
 horse-PL-REF watch-POL
 ‘Watch the horses!’
- (3) bi bagš(i)-d-aa tosgon-ee-goo tuxay
 I teacher-DL-REF village-GEN-REF about
 speak-CONI üg-əə-bi
 yari-ǰ give-PAS-1
 ‘I spoke about my village to my teacher.’

3.2.1.2.4 Personal possessive

Personal possessiveness is marked by suffixing the following forms to the noun phrase. Morpheme /many/ is for the first person plural principally, but it denotes the singular person too. The personal possessive marker for the nouns which belongs to the second person singular of the ordinary~close relation is not attested from the data, but it must be /činy/ as that of the pronouns or verbal nouns. The personal possessive marker for the nouns which belong to the second person plural is not attested from the data either. It must be /tany/, however, if it does exist. Morpheme /ny/ is used not only as personal possessive but also as subject indicator.

1st		2nd		3rd	
SG	PL	SG	PL	SG	PL
-m/miny	many	(činy)/tany	(tany)	ny	(ny)

- (1) aba-m nama-d gutal ab-č ügü-bə
 father-1 I-DL shoes take-CONI give-PAS
 ‘My father bought me shoes.’
- (2) and-iin miny ijii ir-bə
 friend-GEN 1 mother come-PAS
 ‘The mother of a friend of mine came.’
- (3) aba many mod-oor nom-ee širee kii-bə
 father 1PL wood-INS book-GEN table make-PAS
 ‘Our father made a table with wood’

- (4) sayi nükür many ir-lää
just before husband 1PL come-PAS
'Now my husband has come back!'
- (5) kaan činy übdü-jii-nə
where 2 ache-PRO-PRE
'Where of yours is aching?'
- (6) tərən-iig gər-t ny yabuul
he-ACC house-DL 3 send
'Let him go back home!'
- (7) tädäd-iig gər-t ny yabuul
they-ACC house-DL 3 send
'Let them go back home!'
- (8) aba ny ir-xə-d(ə) ny kübüün ny nom
father 3 come-VNF-DL 3 son 3 book
u᠋ᠰi-jii-san
read-PRO-VNP
'When father came back, son was reading book.'

3.2.1.3 Adjective

Adjectives are used as attributes of a noun or a predicate of a sentence. The noun in comparison takes the ablative case marker, but adjectives do not change their form. /ənə/ and /tər/ are used as demonstrative adjectives as we see in examples (3).

- (1) tərənee aab nodnyo᠋᠓ jil šin gər-əə
he(GEN) father last year new house-REF
bari-ba
build-PAS
'His father built a new house last year.'
- (2) maanaree nutag maši sayxan
our native land very beautiful
'Our native land is very beautiful.'
- (3) ənə nuur tər nuur-aas ilüü ürgün
this lake that lake-ABL more wide
'This lake is wider than that lake.'

3.2.1.4 Numerals

3.2.1.4.1 The numerals in attribute and cardinal forms

Khamnigan numerals have “the latent -n” in their underlying forms, thus it appears on the surface when the numerals are used as an attribute, genitive, dative-locative, and ablative. When numerals are used as cardinal numbers, /-n/ does not appear on the surface.

The morpheme /nəgən/ (one) is not used as a numeral attribute. It is used for the date of the month as in example (1b). It is also used as an indefinite article in English as in example in (1c). The /nəgən/ makes a kind of indefinite pronoun after the interrogative pronoun /kən/ as in example (1d).

(1a) nəgə

‘one’

(1b) šin-ee nəgən

new-GEN one

first day of a month

(1c) bagš namad nəgə nom ügü-əə
 teacher I(DL) one book give-PAS

‘Teacher gave me a book.’

(1d) təygbəl kən nəgən kün ir-əə gü

then who one person come-PAS INT

‘Is there anyone who came then?’

The morphemes /koyor/ ‘two’ and /xoyor/ ‘two’ appear almost evenly. The morpheme /xoyoron/ is not used as an attribute but as the date of the month. The /koyor/xoyor/ are used as a coordinative word as in (2d).

(2a) koyor/xoyor

‘two’

(2b) koyor/xoyor mori

two horse

‘two horses’

- (2c) šin-ee xoyron
 new-GEN two
 ‘second day of the month’
- (2d) ijii aba xoyor yari-lca-ĵii-na
 mother father two talk-REC-PRO-PRE
 ‘Mother and father are talking to each other.’

Thus, numerals in the data may be presented as below.¹⁰⁾

Meaning(s) and Form(s)

0 # tæg (< Ti. thig[le] ‘zero’)

1 # nэгə, nэгэн

2 # koyor/xoyor, xoyoron

3 # gurba, gurban

4 # дүрбү, дүрбүн (as in дүрбүнii нэгə ‘one fourth’)

5 # tabu

6 # ĵirgaa/jurgaa, jurgaan (as in jurgaanee koyor)

7 # doloo, dolaan (as in dolaan burkan ‘Ursa major’)

8 # nayma, nayman (as in nayman nasutee)

9 # yüsü

10 # araba, arba, araban (as in araban ĵil ‘ten years’)

11 # arban нэгə

12 # arban koyor

13 # arban gurba

14 # arban дүрб

15 # arban tabu, arban taban (as in šinee arban taban ‘15th day of a month’)

16 # arban jurgaa

17 # arban doloo

18 # arban naym

19 # arban yüsü

20 # kori

21 # korin нэгə

10) Numerals tæg (zero), buma (hundred thousand), sayi (million), дүнчүүр (hundred million), and тэрбүм (billion) are of Tibetan origin.

- 30 # guči, gučín (as in gučín minuut ‘30 minutes’)
- 40 # düči, düčín (as in düčín minuut ‘40 minutes’)
- 50 # tabi
- 60 # jira
- 70 # dal
- 80 # naya
- 90 # yərə
- 100 # juu, juun (as in juun nasutee)
- 200 # koyor juu/xoyor juu
- 300 # gurban juu
- 1,000 # myaᅇga, myəᅇga, myaᅇgu
- 1,942 # myaᅇga yüsün juun düčín koyor (as in myaᅇga yüsün juun düčín koyor ond ‘in the year of 1942’)
- 2,000 # koyor myəᅇga
- 3,000 # gurban myəᅇga
- 6,000 # jurgaan myaᅇgan (as in jurgaan myaᅇgan colkoob ‘6,000 tugrug’)
- 10,000 # arban miᅇgu/arban myəᅇga/tümə
- 30,000 # gučín myaᅇgan (as in gučín myaᅇgan colkoob ‘30,000 tugrugs’)
- 36,000 # gučín jurgaan mjaᅇgan (as in gučín jurgaan mjaᅇgan colkoob ‘36,000 tugrugs’)
- 45,000 # düčín taban myaᅇgan (as in düčín taban myaᅇgan tugrug ‘45,000 tugrugs’)
- 83,000 # nayan myaᅇga gurban juu (as in nayan myaᅇga gurban juu kabtgay dürbüljin kəlimiitər ‘83,000 square kilometers’)
- 100,000 # juun myəᅇga/arban tümə/buma (< Ti. 'bum ‘one hundred thousand’)
- 1,000,000 # sayi (< Ti. sa-ya ‘one million’)
- 10,000,000 # araban sayi
- 100,000,000 # juun sayi/dünčüür (< Ti. dung-'pyar ‘one hundred million’)
- 1,000,000,000 # tərbüm (< Ti. ter-'bum ‘billion’)
- 10,000,000,000 # juun dünčüür/ik tərbüm

3.2.1.4.2 Ordinal numerals

“Ordinality” is marked by suffixing /-dugaar/ to the cardinal forms. This suffix has an allomorph [-dügəər] which comes after [-back] vowel words. It also has the free variant [-dügəər]. The following ordinal numerals were identified in the data

- first # nэгэдүгээр
- second # koyordugaar
- third # gurbadugaar
- fourth # дүрбүдүгээр
- tenth # arabadugaar
- fifth # tabadugaar
- tenth # arbadugaar
- eleventh # arban nэгэдүгээр
- twentieth # koridugaar/xoridugaar
- thirtieth # гуүидүгээр
- fortieth # дүүидүгээр

Months are expressed by the ordinal numbers. The allomorph for the “ordinality” marking is [-sügəər] in January and November. For the seventh month, that is July, Khamnigan has two forms as in (2a) and (2b).

- (1a) nэгэ-sügəər sar
 one-ORD month
 January (lit. ‘the first month’)
- (1b) arban nэгэ-sügəər sar
 ten one-ORD month
 November (lit. ‘the eleventh month’)
- (2a) dol-dugaar sar
 seven-ORD month
 July (lit. ‘the seventh month’)
- (2b) doloo-dugaar sar
 seven-ORD month
 July (lit. ‘the seventh month’)

The year and the day of a month are expressed by cardinal

numbers, and the days of the week are Tibetan borrowings.

- (3) myaṅga yūsün juun düčin koyor on-d
 thousand nine hundred forty two year-DL
 bay-guula-gda-san
 be-CM-PM-VNP

‘(It was) established in 1942.’

- (4) šin-ee arban taban
 new-GEN ten five
 ‘the 15th day of the first month of the lunar year’

- (5) dabaa garigi
 monday day of the week
 ‘Monday’

3.2.1.4.3 Collective numerals

Collectivity is marked by suffixing /-uul/ to the numeral base, and the /-(V)r/ is dropped in the surface form. Thus, the underlying form in the collective is #koyoruul# and #xoyoruul#, and the surface representation is /koyuul/ and /xoyuul/. Although it is not exactly a numeral but rather an interrogative word, kädüül ‘how many together’ seems to be derived from the combination of stem of /kəd(ən)/ and the collective marker /-uul/ which is realized as [-üül] by the [±back] vowel harmony.

- (1) koy-uul-aa kamt yaba-yəgtii
 two-COL-REF together go-POL

‘Let two of us go together.’

- (2) tanayx am bül käd-üül-əə-t
 yours family how many-COL-REF-2POL

‘How many people are there all together in your family?’

3.2.1.4.4 Distributive numerals

Only the following examples of the distributive numerals are identified in the data. Distributive numerals are marked by the repetition of the same numeral base (cardinal form) and the suffixing of the instrumental case marker /-aar/ to the second numeral base (cardinal form).

- (1) *nəgə nəgə-əər*
 one one-INS
 ‘one each’
- (2) *koyor koyor-oor*
 two two-INS
 ‘two each’
- (3) *gurba gurba-aar*
 three three-INS
 ‘three each’

3.2.1.4.5 Approximate numerals

Approximateness is marked by suffixing the marker /-aad/ to the numeral as in example (1), (2), (3), or putting a word with an approximate meaning after the numeral as in example (4) and (5). The base of the numeral tends to be in the cardinal form.

- (1) *kori-ood*
 twenty-app
 ‘over twenty’
- (2) *guči-aad*
 thirty-app
 ‘over thirty’
- (3) *düči-əəd*
 forty-app
 ‘over forty’
- (4) *tər činy kədün ürk ayl-tee gajar be*
 that 2 how many household-having place INT
koyor juu garee ürk ayl-tee
 two hundred over household-having
 ‘How many households are there in that place? There are over two hundred households.’
- (5) *odoo kəntee aymag-t kamnigaŋ kün*
 now xentii aimag-DL Khamnigan people
kər olon bay-na myaŋga orčim kün bii
 how many be-PRE thousand near people be(PRE)
 ‘How many Khamnigan people are there in Kentii *aimag*,

now? There are around one thousand people.’

3.2.1.4.6 Fraction

Fractions are expressed by the construction “the denominator in genitive form + the numerator in the cardinal form”, as is the case in other Mongolian languages.

- (1) gurban-ee nэгэ
 three-GEN one
 ‘one third’
- (2) дүрбүн-ee нэгэ
 four-GEN one
 ‘one fourth’
- (3) jurgaan-ee koyor
 six-GEN two
 ‘two sixths’

3.2.1.4.7 Multiple numerals

Multiplicity is marked by suffixing the marker /-taa/ to the numeral as in example (1), or putting such words as /udaa/ ‘time, occasion’, dakin ‘~time, ~fold, again’ which can induce the meaning of multiplicity, after the numeral as in example (2) and (3). We do not have examples of the usage of /dakin/ ‘~time, ~fold, double, again’ in the data. The numeral functions as an attribute of the words with a meaning of multiplicity.

- (1) koyor-taa
 two-MUL
 ‘two times, twice’
- (2) нэгэ удаа
 one occasion
 ‘one time, once’
- (3) gurban удаа оѳи-son-bi
 three occasion go-VNF-1
 ‘I have been there three times.’

3.2.1.4.8 Pseudo-numeral words

There are words which are not exactly numerals but share certain functions of the numeral words, including /xugas/ ‘half’, /dakin/ ‘double’, /koso/ ‘pair’, /bügüd~bügs/ ‘all’, /niitə/ ‘all, total’, /olon/ ‘many, a lot’, /ücəə/ ‘few, little’.

3.2.1.4.9 Numerals and interrogative pronouns

Certain interrogative pronouns, including /kəčineen/ ‘how much’, /kədən~xədən/ ‘how many’, /kəddügər/ ‘which one (in series)’, /kədii~xədii/ ‘how much’, /kər olon/ ‘how many’, demand information in numerals.

- (1) odoo kəntee aymag-t kamnigan kün kər olon
 now xentii aimag-DL Khamnigan people how many
 bay-na myaŋga orčim kün bii
 be-PRE thousand near people be(PRE)
 ‘How many Khamnigan people are there in Kentii *aimag*,
 now? There are around one thousand people.’
- (2) tom ny kədən nasu-tee nayman nasu-tee
 big 3 how many age-having eight age-having
 ‘How old is your big child? He/She is eight years old.’
- (3) ünü ny kədii/xədii düčün taban myaŋgan colkoob
 price 3 how much forty five thousand tugrug
 ‘How much is the price of it? It is forty five thousand *tugrugs*.’

3.2.1.4.10 More than and less than

We may speculate that the expression ‘more than’ and ‘less than’ are constructed by “numeral-ablative + dəəš ‘above’” and “numeral-ablative + dooš ‘below’” through the following information in the data.

- (1) arba-aas dəəš
 ten-ABL above
 ‘more than ten’
- (2) arba-aas dooš
 ten-ABL below
 ‘less than ten’

3.2.1.5 Pronouns

3.2.1.5.1 Personal pronouns¹¹⁾

3.2.1.5.1.1 First Person

3.2.1.5.1.1.1 Singular

The nominative /bi/ and the genitive /minyee/ of the first person singular of the Mongol Khamnigan are the same as those forms of other major Mongolian dialects. The common underlying of these two cases may be proposed as #bi(n)-#. The nominative /bi/ may possibly be explained as the final drop of the unstable /-n/ on the surface level. The initial /m-/ in the genitive /minyee/ then may then be explained as the “nasalization of the initial /b-/” by the assimilation to the /-n/ which is retrieved in the genitive case as /-nyee/, on the surface level.

For the dative-locative case, Khamnigan has both /nada-/ and /nama-/ stems, while Standard Khalkha has the /nada-/ stem, and Standard Buryat has the /nama-/ stem. It is not surprising however, because Khamnigan is not the only dialect that has both /nada-/ and /nama-/ stems in oblique cases. For example, the oblique cases of the first person singular of Ordos dialect in Mostaert (1968: 482) has both stems including the dative-locative. Although the major form of the dative-locative of the first person singular is /nadur/ (to me) in Written Mongolian, the /nama-/ stem form is also registered in Lessing (1982: 562) and Kowalewskii (1846: 615). *The Secret History of the Mongols* has no example of the dative-locative form with the /nama-/ stem, though.

In accusative form, it has only the /nama-/ stem as other Mongolian dialects.

For the instrumental case, Khamnigan has both the /nada-/

11) A paper of the same topic was read in Yu (2010b) in the 2010 National Conference (2010.11.13) of The Altaic Society of Korea, then revised.

singular, as the combination of the stem *na-* and the grammatical morphemes *-da*, *-dur*, *-dača* respectively. Another possibility might be an underlying stem **nada-*, thus: **nada-da* > *nada* (to me), **nada-dur* > *nadur* (to me), and **nada-ača* > *nadača* (from me).

Poppe (1960) and other Buryat grammars do not mention the directional case of the noun and the pronoun. Our ASK REAL questionnaire has not enough questions to draw the examples of the usage of the directional case, especially for that of the personal pronouns. We have some examples of the directional case in the noun, which suggests that the directional case of the pronoun also exists in Buryat dialects. The following examples were collected during the 2004 fieldwork study of the (Aga) Khori Buryat of the ASK REAL team from Mrs. Bal'jinimaeva Tsypelma Tsyrenovna (A Mongolist, born in 1950):

(2a) *mori-d tala-ruu xarayld-na*

Horse-PL steppe-DIR run-PRE

'Horses run toward the steppe.'

(2b) *tərə mori-in šinj-eer saha-ruu or-oo*

he horse-GEN feature-INS snow-DIR enter-PAS

'He dashed into the snow like a horse.'

(2c) *bidə xada-ruu gara-xa-da agna-xa-bdi*

we mountain-DIR go out-VNF-DL hunt-VNF-2PL

'We will do hunting when we go to the mountain.'

Declension of the First Person Singular

Dialects, Cases, Underlying Stems		Mongol Khamnigan		Khalkha	Buryat	Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)	Written Mongolian
		Binder	Dadal				
Nom	*bin-	bi	bi	bi	bi	bi	bi
Gen	*bin-	minyee	minyee	minii	minii	minu	minu
DL	nada-	nadad	nadad	nad, nadad	-	nada, nadur	nadur, nada
	nama-	namad	namada	-	namda	-	namdur, namadu
Acc	nada-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	nama-	namayg	namayg	namayg	namay, namayye	nama, namayi	namayi
Abl	nada-	-	nadaas	nadaas	-	nadača	nada-ača
	nama-	namaas	namaas	-	namhaa	-	nama-ača
Ins	nada-	nadaar	nadaar	nadaar	-	-	nada-bar
	nama-	namaar	namaar	-	namaar	nama'ar	nama-bar
Com	nada-	-	-	nadtei	-	-	nada-luγa
	nama-	namatee	namatee	-	namtay	namalu'a	nama-luγa
Dir	nada-	-	-	nadruu	-	-	-
	nama-	(namad)	namaruu	-	-	-	-

3.2.1.5.1.1.2 Plural

It has /bidan-/ and /man-/ type stems, hearer inclusive and hearer exclusive respectively as the consultants felt. However, the borderline is not always clear, especially when /bidan-/ is concerned.

(3a) Both consultants:

bidən-iig	bitgii	jod-ooree
we(INC)-ACC	NEG	beat-PRE

‘Do not beat us.’

(3b) Binder consultant:

bidən-ürüü il jakidal yabuul-aaryəgtii
we(INC)-DIR open letter send-POL

‘Send us a postcard, please.’

(3c) Binder consultant:

manar-t jaxia bič-eeryəgtii
we(EXC)-DL letter write-POL

‘Write a letter to us, please.’

(3c’) Dadal consultant:

bidən-d jaxia bič-əree
we(INC)-DL letter write-PRE

‘Write a letter to us.’

(3d) Binder consultant:

manuus tanar-luu il jakidal yabuul-ka-bid
we(EXC) you(PL)-DIR open letter send-VNF-1PL

‘We will send you(plural) a postcard.’

(3d’) Dadal consultant:

bid tanar-luu-gaa il jaxidal
we(INC) you(PL)-DIR-REF open letter
yabuul-xa-bid
send-VNF-1PL

‘We will send you(plural) a postcard.’

The Binder *sum* consultant used /bidan-/ and /bidanuus-/ stems and the Dadal consultant used /bidan-/ and /bidannar-/ stems for the inclusive expressions, which are all found in many Mongolian dialects, including the Ordos dialect. The /bidnuud-/ variety in Buryat or Ordos did not appear in the speeches of our consultants. The stems /bidanuus-/ and /bidannar-/ must be the combinations of /bidan-/ (we) and the plural markers /-uus/ or /-nar/. The /bidanuus-/ and /bidannar-/ stems, that is /bidnuus/ and /bidnar/ in Binder realization, were found only in the nominative expressions.

The /man-/ type stem has three varieties: /man-/, /*mannar-/, and /manuus-/. The stems /*mannar-/ and /manuus-/ must be

Улаар. 10, 1. ᠪᠢᠳᠠᠨᠠᠷ.]; *viue* (DOWALEWSKI)]
bidanar = *bida*.
bidanart'ā = *bidant'ā*.
bidani gén. de *bida* nous.
bidant'ā ensemble avec nous.
bidan-tš'in = *bida* nous (dans les chansons).
bidanūdt'ā = *bidanūst'ā*.
bidanūs = *bida* nous.
bidanūst'ā ensemble avec nous.
bidanūt = *bidanūs*.

Oblique cases of the first person plural, Ordos dialect, Mostaert (1968: 68).

the combinations of /man-/ and the plural markers /-uus/ or /-nar/. The Binder *sum* consultant used the /man-/ type stem in the genitive, the dative-locative, the accusative, the instrumental, and the comitative forms, which means it is not used in nominative and directional

expressions. The stem /*mannar-/ of the /man-/ type stem is found only in the genitive expression, and the stem /manuus-/ is used in the genitive and the instrumental expressions of the Binder *sum* consultant. The Dadal *sum* consultant had only the /man-/ stem among three varieties of the /man-/ type stem, and used it for genitive and instrumental expressions.

Declension of the First Person Plural

Dialects, Cases, Underlying stems			Mongol Khamnigan		Khalkha	Buryat	Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)	Written Mongolian
			Binder	Dadal				
Nom	bidan-	bidan-	bid	bid	bid	bide	bida(n)	bida(n)
		*bidannar-	-	bidnar	bidnar	bidener	ba	-
		bidanus-	bidnuus	bidnuus	-	-	-	-
	man-	man-	-	-	-	-	-	-
		*mannar-	-	-	-	-	-	-
		manuus-	manuus	-	-	-	-	-

Gen	bidan-	bidan-	bidnee	bidnee	bidnii	bideney	bidanu	bidan-u
		*bidannar-	-	-	-	bidenerey	-	-
		bidanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	man-	man-	manay	manay	manay	manay	manu	man-u
		*mannar-	manaree	-	-	maanaray	-	-
		manuus-	manuusee	-	-	-	-	-
DL	bidan-	bidan-	bidənd	bidənd	bidend	bidende	bidadur, bidandur, bidana	bidan-dur
		*bidannar-	-	-	-	bidenerte	-	-
		bidanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	man-	man-	-	-	-	manda	mana, mandur	-
		*mannar-	manart	-	-	maanarta	-	-
		manuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Acc	bidan-	bidan-	bidniig	bidniig	bidniig	bideniye	bidani	bidan-i
		*bidannar-	-	-	-	bideneriye	-	-
		bidanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	man-	man-	-	-	-	maniye	mani	-
		*mannar-	manariig	-	-	maanariye	-	-
		manuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Abl	bidan-	bidan-	bidənəəs	bidnaas	bidnees	bidenhee	bidanača	bidan-ača
		*bidannar-	-	-	-	bidenerhee	-	-
		bidanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	man-	man-	-	-	-	manhaa	-	-
		*mannar-	-	-	-	man	-	-
		manuus-	-	-	-	maanarhaa	-	-
Ins	bidan-	bidan-	-	bidnaar	bidneer	bideneer	-	bidan-iyar
		*bidannar-	-	-	-	bidenerer	-	-
		bidanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	man-	man-	-	-	-	manaar	-	-
		*mannar-	-	-	-	maanaraar	-	-
		manuus-	manuusaar	-	-	-	-	-

Com	bidan-	bidan-	bidəntee	bidəntee	bidenty	bidenty	bidanlu'a	bidan-luya
		*bidannar-	-	-	-	bidenerterey	-	-
		bidan uus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	man-	man-	-	-	-	mantai	-	-
		*mannar-	-	-	-	manartay	-	-
		manuus-	manuustee	-	-	-	-	-
Dir	bidan-	bidan-	bidəŋürüü	bidəŋuruu	bidenrüü	-	-	-
		*bidannar-	-	-	-	-	-	-
		bidanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	man-	man-	-	-	-	-	-	-
		*mannar-	-	-	-	-	-	-
		manuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-

3.2.1.5.1.2 Second Person¹²⁾

3.2.1.5.1.2.1 Ordinary ~ Close Singular

It is basically the same with the Khalkha system in all the case expressions. The Binder and the Dadal *sum* systems are exactly the same even in phonological levels. The consultants used the /či(n)/ stem in nominative and genitive expressions, and the /čama-/ stem for remaining oblique cases. The nominative /či/ may be explained as the “-n drop” as that of the /bi(n)-/.

12) Our ASK REAL questionnaire did not cover the second person [+neutral] pronouns. If we checked the third person [+neutral] pronoun, there would be some varieties of the /öör-/ (self, usually addressed to the unfamiliar person of the similar age) and the /öörs-/ (selves, usually addressed to the unfamiliar people of the similar age) stems as in the Khalkha and some other Mongolian dialects.

Declension of the Second Person Singular: Ordinary ~ Close

Dialects, Cases, Underlying stems		Mongol Khamnigan		Khalkha	Buryat	Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)	Written Mongolian
		Binder	Dadal				
Nom	či(n)-	či	či	či	ši	či	či
Gen	či(n)-	činyee	činyee	činii	šinii	činu	činu
DL	čama-	čamad	čamad	čamd	šamda	čimada, čimadur	čimadur
Acc	čama-	čamayg	čamayg	čamayg	šamay, šama yye	čimayi	čimayi
Abl	čama-	čamaas	čamaas	čamaas	šamhaa	čimadača	číma-ača
Ins	čama-	čamaar	čamaar[ʧ ^h ima:r]	čamaar	šamaar	-	číma-bar
Com	čama-	čama tee	čama atee	čamatee	šama tay	čimalu'a	čím-luɣa
Dir	čama-	čamaruu	čamaruu	čamruu	-	-	-

3.2.1.5.1.2.2 Polite ~ Distant Singular

Our questionnaire actually had no questions which may have induced statements that include the ablative, the instrumental, the comitative, and the directional cases of the polite ~ distant second person singular forms. However, it is likely that both consultants have the /tan-/ stem pronoun for the polite ~ distant singular in all the cases, as do the Khalkha speakers.

I was not able to collect the Buryat examples of the ablative, instrumental, and the directional usage of the second person singular for the polite ~ distant expressions in my data from the fieldwork studies of the Aga, the Alar, the Tsongool, the Sartuul, the Barguzin, the Tunka, and the Oka dialects in Buryatia and Irkutsk *oblast*, and in an interview with a Khori speaker in Seoul from 2004 to 2007. However, it is almost apparent that the Buryat also began to use the /tan-/ stem for the polite ~ distant expressions of the second person singular and /tannar-/ for the plurality of all the case declensions. The following examples were

collected during the 2004 fieldwork study on the (Aga) Khori Buryat of the ASK REAL from Mrs. Bal’jinimaeva Tsygelmaa Tsyrenovna (a Mongolist, born in 1950):

(4a) ta xana-haa ir-bə-ta?
 you(POL) where-ABL come-PAS-2POL
 bi babuškin-aar irkuuck-hee yaba-na-b
 I Babushkin-INS Irkuutsk-Abl go-PRE-1
 ‘Where are you coming from? I am travelling from Irkutsk through Babushkin.’

(4b) bidə gol ošo-ya tanar xada-aar
 we river go-VOL you(PL) mountain-INS
 gara-gtii
 go out-POL
 ‘Let us go to the river, and you go to the mountain please!’

Declension of the Second Person Singular: Polite ~ Distant

Dialects, Cases, Underlying stem(s)		Mongol Khamnigan		Khalkha	Buryat	Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)	Written Mongolian
		Binder	Dadal				
Nom	ta(n)-	ta	ta	ta	ta	-	ta
Gen	ta(n)-	tanyee	tanyee	tanii	tan, tanee, tanay	-	-
DL	ta(n)-	tand	tand	tand	tand	-	-
Acc	ta(n)-	taniig	taniig	taniig	taniye	-	-
Abl	ta(n)-	-	-	tanaas	-	-	-
Ins	ta(n)-	-	-	tanaar	-	-	-
Com	ta(n)-	-	-	tantay	tantay	-	-
Dir	ta(n)-	-	-	tanruu	-	-	-

The stem /ta(n)-/ and its declension forms were used only for the second person plural in *The Secret History of the Mongols*. Lessing (1982: 760) states that /ta/ in Written Mongolian is used for the polite address but examples are unavailable especially

for the oblique cases. Kowalewski (1849: 1547, 1559-1560) has certain declension forms for /ta(n)-/ but it is uncertain whether it was for plural or polite ~ distant expression due to the ambiguity of the Russian “bac” and French “vous”, which may be interpreted both ways.

3.2.1.5.1.2.3 Plural

The Binder *sum* consultant used the /tanar-/, the /tanuus-/, and the /tanuud-/ stems, which are apparently the combinations of stem /ta(n)-/, which itself was already second person plural, and the plural markers /-nar/ or /-uus/. Both stems are found in Khalkha and in Buryat.

The Buryat /tanaad/ was not used by our consultants. However, the possibility that our questionnaire was limited, and thus our data too, must also be considered.

In Khalkha, /tanar-/ is regarded as the standard form for the second person plural, while the stem /ta(n)-/ is regarded so in Standard Buryat, which is based on the Khori dialect.

The stem /tanuus-/ appeared only in the nominative and the genitive forms of our Binder *sum* consultant. She used the /tanuud-/ stem only once, and it was in nominative case.

The Dadal *sum* consultant used only the /tanar-/ stem which is the Standard Khalkha form for the second person plural.

Declension of the Second Person Plural

Dialects, Cases, Underlying stems		Mongol Khamnigan		Khalkha	Buryat	Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)	Written Mongolian
		Binder	Dadal				
Nom	ta(n)-	-	-	-	ta	ta	ta
	*tannar-	tanar	tanar	tanar	tanar	-	-
	tanuus-	tanuus	-	-	tanuus	-	-
	tanuud-	tanuud	-	-	-	-	-

Gen	tan-	-	-	tanay(?)	tanay	tanu	tanu
	*tannar-	tanaree	tanaree	tanariin	tanaray	-	-
	tanuus-	tanuusee	-	-	-	-	-
	tanuud-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tanuud-	-	-	-	-	-	-
DL	tan-	-	-	-	tanda	tana	tan-a, tan-dur
	*tannar-	tanart	tanart	tanart	tanarta	-	-
	tanuus-	-	-	-	tanuusta	-	-
	tanuud-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Acc	tan-	-	-	-	taniye	tani	tan-i
	*tannar-	tanariig	tanariig	tanariig	tanariye	-	-
	tanuus-	-	-	-	tanu ušiye	-	-
	tannud-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Abl	tan-	-	-	-	tanhaa	-	tan-ača
	*tannar-	tanaraas	tanaraas	tanaraas	tanarhaa	-	-
	tanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tanuud-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ins	tan-	-	-	-	tanaar	-	tan-iyar
	*tannar-	tanaraar	tanaraar	tanaraar	tanaraar	-	-
	tanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tanuud-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Com	tan-	-	-	-	tantay	tanlu'a	tan-luɣa
	*tannar-	tanartee	tanartee	tanartee	tanartay	-	-
	tanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tanuud-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Dir	tan-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	*tannar-	tanarluu	tanarluu	tanarluu	-	-	-
	tanuus-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tanuud-	-	-	-	-	-	-

3.2.1.5.1.3 Third person¹³⁾

3.2.1.5.1.3.1 Third person singular

We noticed the /tərən-/ and /tüün-/ stems of the third person singular pronoun, which are used usually for the persons not in the scene of the speech, and which may be described with the symbol [-near]. The Binder *sum* consultant used the /tərən-/ stem, which behaves as an ordinary noun, for all the declensions except the directional case. She used the /tüün-/ stem, the same one as the Standard Khalkha stem /tüün-/ for the oblique cases in the third person singular, but for the genitive and the dative-locative cases only. The Dadal *sum* consultant used the /tərən-/ stem for all the case expressions except the accusative case. She used the /tüün-/ stem for the genitive, the dative-locative, and the instrumental cases.

Although Standard Khalkha has the /tüün-/ stem for the oblique cases, one may hear or see the /teren-/ stem declensions in the speech or writing of Khalkha speakers quite often.

Declension forms of the third person singular pronoun in *The Secret History of the Mongols*, a representative Middle Mongolian text, were imaari (instrumental-accusative > instrumental), imada (dative-locative), imayi (accusative), and inu (genitive). The stems /tere/ for the nominative and /te'ün-/ for the oblique cases were used as the demonstrative pronoun. However, they were used as the personal pronoun, too. For example:

(5a) Volume 1, page 23, lines 7–8 for nominative:

ᠵадаран-у	ебүгe	tere	бол-ба
Jadaran(tribe)-GEN	grandfather	he	become-PAS

‘(lit. As for the grandfather of the Jadarans, he became.) He

13) Our ASK REAL questionnaire did not cover the third person [+near] pronouns, which would denote the person(s) at the scene of the speech. If we checked the third person [+near] pronoun, there would be some varieties of the /ene-/ (this person, singular) and the /ede(n)-/, /ednar-/ (these people, plural) stems as in the Khalkha, the Buryat, and some other Mongolian dialects.

became the ancestor of the Jadaran tribe.’

(5b) Vol 11, page 37, lines 6~9, nominative and genitive:

Jebe *tere* od-ču qan melig-ün balayad
 Jebe he go-CONI Qan Melig(name)-GEN cities
 da’ari-ju ülü könde-n γada’un nögči-jü’ü.
 attack-CONI NEG touch-CONM outside pass-PAS
Te’ünü qoyina-ča sübe’etei mün yosu-’ar
he-GEN behind-ABL Sübeetei same manner-INS
 ülü könden nögči-jü’ü
 NEG touch-CONM pass-PAS

‘(lit. Jebe, he went passing the cities of the Qan Melig, passed without touching (them). Behind him, Sübe’etei in the same manner passed without touching (them)). Jebe, without touching, detoured the cities of the Qan Melig. Behind from *him*, Sübe’etei, in the same manner, passed without touching (the cities of the Qan Melig).’

Declension of the Third Person Singular

Dialects, Cases, Underlying Stems	Mongol Khamnigan		Khalkha	Buryat	Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)	Written Mongolian	
	Binder	Dadal					
Nom	tərən-	tər	tər	ter	tere	tere	tere
	tüün-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Gen	tərən-	tərənee	tərənee	ternii	tere(e)ney	te’ünü	tegün-ü
	tüün-	tüünee	tüünee	tüünii	-	-	-
DL	tərən-	tərənd	tərənd	-	tere(e)nde	-	-
	tüün-	tüünd	tüünd	tüünd	-	-	tegün-dür, tegün-e
Acc	tərən-	tərəniig	-	-	tere(e)niye	-	tegün-i
	tüün-	-	tüüniig	tüüniig	-	-	-
Abl	tərən-	tərənəəs	tərənəəs	terniig	tere(e)nhee	-	-
	tüün-	-	-	tüünees	-	-	tegün-eče

Ins	tərən-	tərənəər	-	ternees	teregeer	-	-
	tüün-	-	tüügəər	tüüneer	-	-	tegün-iyer
Com	tərən-	tərantee	tərantee	-	tere(e)nte	-	-
	tüün-	-	-	tüün-tei	-	-	tegün-lüge
Dir	tərən-	(tərənd)	tərəngürüü (gaa)	-	-	-	-
	tüün-	-	-	tüünrüü	-	-	-

3.2.1.5.1.3.2 Third person plural

The Binder *sum* consultant has the /tədən-/, /təd-/, and /tədəd-/ stems while the Dadal *sum* consultant has the /tədən-/ and /tədnar-/ stems.

The /təd-/ stem of the Binder dialect must have been derived through analogy from the stem /tədən-/ which is the common stem in modern Mongolian dialects for the third person plural. Then, the stem /tədəd-/ must have been derived from the stem /təd-/ by adding the plural marker /-d/. Otherwise, we would have to attribute the dative-locative /tədəd/ of the Binder dialect as the repeated articulatory errors of the consultant.

(6a) təd-əd jakia yabuul-aaregtii
 they-DL letter send-POL
 ‘Send them a letter, please.’

(6a’) təd-əd il jakidal yabuul-aaregtii
 they-DL open letter send-POL
 ‘Send them a postcard, please.’

(6b) tədəd ücügüdür surguuli-d-aa yaba-san
 they yesterday school-DL-REF go-VNP
 ‘They went to school yesterday.’

(6b’) tədəd margaaši surguuli-d-aa yaba-ka
 they tomorrow school-DL-REF go-VNF
 ‘They will go to school tomorrow.’

The stem #*tədənnar-# > /tədnar-/ of the Dadal dialect must have been derived from the stem /tədən-/ by suffixing the plural

marker /-nar/. Its equivalent is found in the Buryat dialect as /tedener-/ according to Poppe (1960: 55), although the Standard Buryat stem seems to be /teden-/. Khalkha also has /tednar-/. Although the Standard Khalkha form is /teden-/, one may easily collect the /tednar-/ in the speeches of the Khalkha speakers.

The third person plural in *The Secret History of the Mongols* has two systems, they are /an-/ and /teden-/: The /an-/ stem has such declension forms as /andur/ (dative-locative), /ani/ (accusative), and /anu/ (genitive) while the /teden-/ stem has /tede/ (nominative), tede'eri (instrumental-accusative > accusative), /tedene/ (dative-locative), /tedeni/ (accusative), and /tedendür/ (dative-locative). The stem /teden-/ was also the demonstrative pronoun in *The Secret History of the Mongols*.

Declension of the Third Person Plural

Dialects, Cases, Underlying Stems		Mongol Khamnigan		Khal-kha	Buryat	Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)	Written Mongolian
		Binder	Dadal				
Nom	tədən-	təd	təd	ted	tede	tede	tede
	təd-	təd	-	-	-	-	-
	tədэд-	tədэд	-	-	-	-	-
	*tədənnar-	-	tədnar	tednar	tedener	-	-
Gen	tədən-	-	tədənee	tednii	tede(e)ney	teden-ü	teden-ü
	təd-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tədэд-	tədэdee	-	-	-	-	-
	*tədənnar-	-	-	-	tedenerey	-	-
DL	tədən-	tədənd	tədənd	tedend	tede(e)nde	tedene, tedendür	teden-dür
	təd-	tədэд	-	-	-	-	-
	tədэд-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	*tədənnar-	-	-	-	tedenerte	-	-

Acc	tədən-	-	-	tedniig	tede(e)niye	tedeni, tede'eri	teden-i
	təd-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tədэд-	tədэдииг	tэдэдииг	-	-	-	-
	*tэдэннар-	-	-	-	tedeneriye	-	-
Abl	tədən-	-	tэдэнээс	tednees	tede(e)nhee	-	teden-еёе
	təd-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tэдэд-	tэдэдээс	-	-	-	-	-
	*tэдэннар-	-	-	-	tedenerhee	-	-
Ins	tədən-	tэдэнээр	tэдэнээр	tedn eer	tedeegeer	-	teden-iyer
	təd-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tэдэд-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	*tэдэннар-	-	-	-	tedenereer	-	-
Com	tədən-	-	tэдэнтее	tendentey	tede(e)ntey	-	teden-tei
	təd-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tэдэд-	tэдэдтее	-	-	-	-	-
	*tэдэннар-	-	-	-	tedenerhee	-	-
Dir	tədən-	(tэдэд)	tэдэңуруу	tendenrüü	-	-	-
	təd-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	tэдэд-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	*tэдэннар-	-	-	-	-	-	-

3.2.1.5.2 Possessive pronouns

It seems that we failed to make the difference, between the genitive form of a personal pronoun and the possessive pronoun, clear to the consultant, or more precisely speaking, make clear what we were expecting from her. Since she gave us /tanayx/ 'your family members', possessive pronouns of this linguistic unit must be the combination of the "genitive form of the personal pronouns + morpheme -x", as in Khalkha.

Possessive pronouns

Person	Number	
	SG	PL
1st	minyeex	bidneex, manayx
2nd	činyeex, taniix	tanayx, tanareex
3rd	tərəneex/tüüneex	tədədeex

3.2.1.5.3 Reflexive pronouns

The words /əər/ ‘self’ plays the role of reflexive pronoun. Cases, reflexive possessiveness, and number are marked on this word.

(1) bi əər-eeŋ-gəə tüləə tiišee oči-son-bi
 I self-GEN-REF for thither go-VNP-1
 ‘I went there for myself.’

(2) manuus əər-sd-eeŋ-gəə tüləə tiišee
 we(EXC) self-PL-GEN-REF for thither
 oči-son-bid
 go-VNP-2PL
 ‘We went there for ourselves.’

(3) bi əər-t-əə šin xubcas ab-aa-bi
 I self-DL-REF new clothes take-PAS-1
 ‘I bought new clothes for myself.’

3.2.1.5.4 Demonstrative pronouns

The demonstrative pronouns may be classified by number and by relative distance, that is, singular and plural and [+near] and [-near] as below. Note that the demonstrative pronouns are the same as the third persons of the personal pronoun. Although we have only few examples of the demonstrative pronouns, we may conclude that it has the same declension system as the personal pronoun.

The case markers and the personal possessive markers are suffixed to the demonstrative pronoun bases.

Number	Relative distance	
	+ Near	-Near
SG	ənə 'this'	tər 'that'
PL	əd nar 'these'	təd 'those', tədəd 'those'

- (1) ənə jam sayn gü
 this road good INT
 ənə dütü jam
 this short road
 'Is this road good? This is a shortcut.'
- (2) tər yamar nər-tee uul
 that what kind of name-having mountain
 'What is the name of the mountain?'
 tər kəntii xan bay-na
 that Kentii xan(name) be-PRE
 'That is Kentii xan (mountain).'

3.2.1.5.5 Interrogative pronouns

The following interrogative pronouns were identified in the data; /ali/ 'which', /kaaguur/ 'where, (along) which way', /kaan~xaan/ 'where', /kaašaa~kaašaa/ 'to where', /kəčineen/ 'how much', /kəd(ən)/ 'how many', /kəddüggər/ 'which one (in a series)', /kədiid/ 'when', /kəjəə/ 'when', /kən/ 'who', /kər/ 'how, to what extent', /yamar/ 'what kind of', /yuu/ 'what'. Case and possessiveness may be marked on certain interrogative pronouns. Some examples of the real usages are:

- (1) ta kaan-aas ir-sən-t
 you(POL) where-ABL come-VNP-2POL
 'Where have you come from?'
- (2) odoo kaaguur yaba-ka-t
 now where to go-VNF-2POL
 'Where are you going now?'
- (3) tanayx am bül kəd-üül-əə-t
 yours family how many-COL-REF-2POL

‘How many people are there all together in your family?’

- (4) *odoo kəntee aymag-t kamnigaŋ kün kər olon*
now xentii aimag-DL Khamnigan people how many
bay-na
be-PRE

‘How many Khamnigan people are there in Kentii *aimag*, now?’

- (5) *tom ny kədən nasu-tee*
big 3 how many age-having

‘How old is your big child?’

- (6) *ünü ny kədii*
price 3 how much

‘How much is the price of it?’

- (7) *ta yuu kii-dəg-t*
you(POL) what do-VNH-2POL

‘What kind of work are you doing?’

- (8) *či kən či*
you who 2

‘Who are you?’

- (9) *či kəjəə ənd ir-əə-či*
you when here come-PAS-2

‘When did you come here?’

3.2.1.5.6 Indefinite pronouns

The indefinite pronoun is derived by either attaching the concessive particle /č/ or adjoining the word /nəgən/ ‘one’, having the meaning of concessiveness, to the interrogative pronoun. Case is marked on the interrogative part of the word.

- (1) *namaas əər kən č mədə-kə-güy*
I(ABL) other who CONC know-VNF-NEG
 ‘Nobody knows except me.’

- (2) *gər-t-əə buca-xa jam-d-aa*
house-DL-REF return-VNF road-DL-REF
kən-tee č taraa-ba-güy-bi
who-COM CONC encounter-PAS-NEG-1
 ‘I saw no one on the way back home.’

- (3) təygbəl kən nəgən kün ir-əə gü
 then who one person come-PAS INT
 ‘So, is there anyone who came?’

3.2.1.6 Verb

A verb may be found in three different forms or states; (1) a finite verb of a sentence, which is the predicate of the whole sentence (2) a non-finite verb, usually called a converb, which serves as a predicate of a non-finite clause, (3) a verbal noun.

3.2.1.6.1 Finite verb

Finite verbs may be divided into two classes; finite verbs of an indicative sentence, and those of an imperative-optative sentence. Tense and aspect, person, and certain moods are marked on the finite verb of a indicative sentence. Mood and person are marked on the finite verb of an imperative-optative sentence.

3.2.1.6.1.1 Tense and aspect

The present and past tenses and progressive, perfective, and imperfective aspects are identified. The present, past tenses and perfective, imperfective aspects are marked by suffixing a grammatical morpheme which usually denotes tense and aspect at the same time. The progressive aspect is marked usually by a “converbial form of a verb + finite form of a copula verb”.

3.2.1.6.1.1.1 Present imperfective

Present imperfective tense/aspect is expressed by suffixing /-na/ to the stem of a finite verb. It has allomorphs [-na], [-nə], and [-no] which are decided by [± back] vowel harmony with the stem vowel. It has free variant [-n].

- (1) ta kaan amdra-na-t
 you(POL) where live-PRE-2POL
 ‘Where do you live?’

- (2) minyee mori gər-t-əə bay-na
 my horse house-DL-REF be-PRE
 ‘My horse is at home.’
- (3) nükür tany gər-t-əə bay-na gü
 husband 2POL house-DL-REF be-PRE INT
 ‘Is your husband at home?’
- (4) ənd tany əbd-nə gü
 here 2POL ache-PRE INT
 ‘Does it ache here?’ (literally ‘Is here of yours aching?’)

3.2.1.6.1.1.2 Future imperfective

In some other Mongolic languages such as Khalkha, future/imperfective tense/aspect is usually marked by the same morpheme as the present/imperfect tense/aspect marker. It should be the same in Khamnigan but future/imperfective tense/aspect marking is thoroughly reliant on verbal noun suffixes in the data.

3.2.1.6.1.1.3 Past perfective

Past perfective is marked by suffixing /-ba/ (-ba, -bə, -bo), /-laa/ (-laa, -ləə, -loo), or /-jēe/¹⁴⁾ to the verbal stem. Although our data does not seem big enough to tell the difference between the past perfective markers, or find all the allomorphs of each morpheme, it seems that /-ba/ denotes “simple past”, /-laa/ “immediate past”, and /-jēe/ “narrative past” as those Khalkha equivalents.

- (1) bi mongol kəl araban jil sur-ba-bi
 I Mongolian language ten year study-PAS-1
 ‘I studied Mongolian for ten years.’
- (2) bi nodnyoŋ oyuutan bol-loo-bi
 I last year student become-PAS-1
 ‘I became a student last year.’
- (3) mэдээн-ээс согс-бол минь улаанбаатар-т
 news-ABL listen-CONC 1 Ulaanbaatar-DL

14) [-čee] is also expected, but not found in the data.

cas ik or-ǰee
 snow much enter-PAS
 ‘According to the news, it snowed much in Ulaanbaatar.’

3.2.1.6.1.1.4 Present progressive

The present progressive tense/aspect is marked by “verbal stem-converbal suffix + copula verb in present imperfective form”. The copula verb is shortened to [-ii-] as in #idə-ǰ-ii-nə-bi# of example (2), thus it may be better if we name /-ǰii-/ as “progressive marker”.

(1) mal sürüg tany targan saykan jusa-ǰ
 cattle herd 2POL fat fine pass summer-CONI
 bay-na gü
 be-PRE INT

‘Is your herd passing the summer healthy and fine?’

(2) odoo bi kool-oo idə-ǰii-nə-bi
 now I meal-REF eat-PRO-PRE-1

‘I am eating a meal now.’

3.2.1.6.1.1.5 Past progressive

The past progressive tense/aspect is supposed to be marked by “verbal stem-converbal suffix + copula verbal stem-past perfective marker” or “verbal stem-converbal suffix + progressive marker-past perfective marker”. However, the past progressive tense/aspect marking is mostly done with the verbal noun form in the data as per example (2).

(1) minyee ir-kə-d tər unta-ǰii-bə
 I(GEN) come-VNF-DL he sleep-PRO-PAS

‘He was sleeping when I came.’

(2) ab-iig ir-xə-d ny nom uñši-ǰii-san-bi
 father-ACC come-VNF-DL 3 book read-PRO-VNP-1

‘When father came, I was reading a book.’

3.2.1.6.1.2 Person

Person is marked by suffixing personal suffixes, either contracted

or full forms of the personal pronouns, to the finite verb when the subject is first person or second person, When the subject is third person, person is not marked.

1st			2nd		3rd	
SG	PL		SG	PL	SG	PL
	Exclusive	Inclusive				
-bi	-bid	-bid	-či/-t	-t	-	-

- (1) бүр cad-ba-bi
completely be satisfied-PAS-1
'I am full.'
- (2) али хэсэг-ийг onilo-bo-чи
which part-ACC aim at-PAS-2
'Which part did you aim at?'
- (3) jaaxan yadara-ж bay-na-bid
a little be tired-CONI be-PRE-2PL
'We are a little bit tired.'
- (4) мануус камт тамих tata-ba-bid
we(EXC) together tobacco smoke-PAS-2PL
'We smoked together.'
- (5) таанууд тамих tata-xa-t
you(PL) tobacco smoke-VNF-2PL
'You(PL) smoke.'
- (6) тэр морин-оос-оо una-ba
he horse-ABL-REF fall-PAS
'He fell from his own horse.'
- (7) тэдэд тамих tata-na
they tobacco smoke-PRE
'They smoke.'

3.2.1.6.1.3 Mood

3.2.1.6.1.3.1 Imperative-Optative mood

Various imperative-optative mood markers are suffixed to the

verbal stem. The following morphemes are identified in the data.

Person & number	Morpheme	Meaning	Remarks
1 SG	-suy	decision	
1SG	-gtbi	polite notice	/-gtii (polite request)/ + /-bi (1st person singular)/. Khalkha and Buryat do not have it.
1SG	-yægtbi	polite notice	/-yә (volition)/ + /-gtii (polite request)/ + /-bi (1st person singular)/. Khalkha and Buryat do not have it.
1	-yi	volition	
2	-ø	immediate command	
2	-aaree (-aaree/ -æaree/ -ooree)	prescription	Have the notion of a somewhat delayed command
2	-gtii	polite request	Buryat has /-gtii/, but Khalkha does not.
2	-yægtii	persuasion	/-yi (volition)/ + /-gtii (polite request)/. Khalkha and Buryat do not have it.
2	-aarægtii (-æærgtii)	polite prescription	/-aaree (prescription)/ + /-gtii (polite request)/
2	-aaryægtii (-ææryægtii)	polite persuasion	/-aaree (prescription)/ + /-yi (volition)/-gtii (polite request)/. Khalkha and Buryat do not have it.
3	-g	permission	
3	-tugay	benediction	

The simple immediate imperative is marked by a zero suffix. Thus only the verbal stem appears on the surface.

- (1) bi cay uu-suy
 I tea drink-VOL

- 'I will have (drink) tea.'
- (2) daraa ny bi buda-gtbi
next 3 I shoot-POL
'I will shoot next time.'
- (3) sudasan-ee tany coxilt-iig üj-yəgtbi
pulse-GEN 2POL beat-ACC see-POL
'Let me check your pulse.'
- (4) ənd suu-cгаа-yi
here sit-MUL-VOL
'Let us sit here.'
- (5) duu duula-ø əsbəl бүјиг бүјигл-ø
sing sing-imp if not dance dance-imp
'Sing a song. Or dance a dance.'
- (6a) manuus-tee xamt yaba-aaree
we(EXC)-COM together go-PRE
'Go with us.'
- (6b) namad jakia bič-əree
1-DL letter write-PRE
'Write a letter to me.'
- (7) ta oro-gtii
you(POL) enter-POL
'Would you please come in.'
- (8) koy-uul-aa kamt yaba-yəgtii
two-COL-REF together go-POL
'Let the two of us go together.'
- (9a) palitoo-g-oo tayl-aarəgtii
overcoat-ACC-REF take off-POL
'Would you please take off your overcoat.'
- (9b) namayg bitgii jod-ooryəgtii
I(ACC) NEG beat-POLPER
'Do not beat me please.'
- (10) təd ənd irə-xə-iig xüs-əsee irə-g
they here come-VNF-ACC want-CONC come-PER3
'If they want to come here, let them come.'

- (11) san-san бүкүн таны сэтгэхэчилэ-н
 think-VNP all 2POL think-CONM
 бүтэ-хэ бол-тугай
 complete-VNF become-BEN
 ‘Let all of your matters be fulfilled as you wish!’

Sometimes, the emphatic aspect marking particle, personal possessive marker, interrogative marker, or person marker may appear after the imperative-optative mood marker as in example (12), (13), (14).

- (12) gar бүү күрү-л-чи
 hand NEG reach-EMP-2
 ‘Do not touch with your hand!’
- (13) манай ulus manda-тугай ny
 we(EXC)-GEN country rise-BEN 3
 ‘Cheers to our nation!’ (lit. ‘Let our country rise!’)
- (14) uu-xa үүм үгү-гтби гү
 drink-VNF thing give-POL INT
 ‘May I offer you something to drink?’

Certain imperative-optative meanings are expressed in some other ways. They may be a polite question as in example (15a), a predicate in verbal noun imperfective form as in example (15b), or by suffixing the /-xmana gü/ construction after the verbal stem to denote the ‘persuasion’ as in (15c).

- (15a) buuga-ee makan-aas-aa nadad jaaxan
 deer-GEN meat-ABL-REF I(DL) a little
 үгү-нэ-т гү
 giv-PRE-2POL INT
 ‘Would you like to give me some venison, please?’
- (15b) чи гурбан үдүр-еэ дотор энэ ном-ииг
 you three day-GEN inside this book-ACC
 бүгүд-ii ny унши-й дуусга-ха-чи
 all-ACC 3 read-CONI finish-VNF-2
 ‘You are to read through this book within three days.’

- (15c) kamt nom uŋši-xamana gü
 together book read-PER INT
 ‘Shall we read a book together?’

3.2.1.6.2 Non-finite verbs

Grammatical suffixes with various meanings are placed at the end of the verbal stem to form the non-finite verb, which serves as the predicate of the dependent or coordinating clauses. The following morphemes are identified in the data.

Morpheme	Aspect
-j/-č	imperfect
-aad (-æəd/-ood)	perfect
-n	modal
-aasee (-aasee/-æsee)	conditional
-bal	conditional
-bč	concessive
-tal (-tal/-tol/-təl)	terminal
-xaar	intention

- (1) kaŋka-d oči-j üj-sən-t gü
 Khankh-DL go-CONI see-VNP-2POL INT
 ‘Have you been to Khankh (place)?’
- (2) gansük oy-g üngürü-n
 Gansukh forest-ACC pass-CONM
 surguuli-d-aa yaba-gči
 school-DL-REF go-VNA
 ‘Gansukh (name) goes to school via the forest. (lit. Gansukh is a one who goes to school passing the forest)’
- (3) üčgüdür bi nom ab-aad gær-t-əə
 yesterday I book take-CONP house-DL-REF

ir-bə-bi

come-PAS-1

‘Yesterday I came home after I had bought a book.’

- (4) ta sayn sur-aasee magta-gda-xa-t
 you(POL) good learn-CONC praise-PM-VNF-2POL
 ‘If you learn well, you will be praised.’
- (5) ta yaba-bal tany bi čī bas yaba-ka-bi
 you(POL) go-CONC 2 I even too go-VNF-1
 ‘If you go, I will go too.’
- (6) bid tamix tata-bči tanuus tamix
 we(INC) tobacco smoke-CONC you(PL) tobacco
 tata-xa-güy-t
 smoke-VNF-NEG-2PL
 ‘We smoke but you do not smoke. (lit. Although we smoke, you(PL) don’t smoke.)’
- (7) cəcəgmaa nəgənt duu duula-ǰ
 Tsetsegmaa(name) once song sing-CONI
 iklə-aasee duus-tal ny duula-gči
 start-CONC finish-cont 3 sing-VNA
 ‘If Tsetsegmaa starts singing, she sings until she finishes.’
- (8) tər anda-tee-gaa uulja-xaar tosgon-d
 he friend-COM-REF meet-INT village-DL
 ir-bə
 come-PAS
 ‘He came to the village to see his friend.’

3.2.1.6.3 Verbal noun

Grammatical suffixes with various meanings are placed at the end of the verbal stem to form the verbal noun. The verbal noun may serve as predicate of a clause, a whole sentence, a nominal phrase, or an attribute of nominals. The following morphemes are identified in the data.

Morpheme	Aspect	Remarks
-ka (-ka/-kə/-xa/-xə)	future imperfective	Also expresses present meaning
-san (-san/-sən/-son)	past perfective	
-(g)aa	past imperfective, progressive present	
-dag	habitual action	
-gči	actor	

- (1a) bi margaaši surguuli-d-aa yaba-xa-bi
 I tomorrow school-DL-REF go-VNF-1
 'I will go to school tomorrow.'
- (1b) tanuud tamix tata-ka-t
 you(PL) tobacco smoke-VNP-2PL
 'You(PL) smoke.'
- (1c) tiišee yaba-xa jam bay-gaa gü
 thither go-VNF road be-VNI INT
 'Is there a road that goes in that direction?'
- (1d) tэд энд ирэхэ-ииг хүс-ээsee ир(э)-g
 they here come-VNF-ACC want-CONC come-PER3
 'If they want to come here, let them come.'
- (2a) bi үчүгүдүр ab-san nom-oo унши-ба-би
 I yesterday take-VNP book-REF read-PAS-1
 'I read a book which I bought yesterday.'
- (2b) bidnuus үчүгүдүр nom унши-й тануус
 we(INC) yesterday book read-CONI you(PL)
 үчүгүдүр jurag jur-san-t
 yesterday picture paint-VNP-2PL
 'We read books and you drew pictures yesterday.'
- (3a) тэр minyee nom-iig nuu-gaa
 he my book-ACC hide-VNI
 'He hid my book.'

- (3b) *tiišee yaba-xa jam bay-gaa gü*
 tither go-VNF road be-VNP INT
 ‘Is there a road that goes in that direction?’
- (4) *ta yuu kii-dæg-t*
 you(POL) what do-VNH-2POL
 ‘What kind of work (activity) are you doing?’
- (5) *bi surguuli dær anda-tee-gaa kamt nom*
 I school over friend-COM-REF together book
uñši-gči-bi
 read-VNA-1
 ‘I am studying at school together with my friend. (lit. I am one who reads books with my own friend.)’

3.2.1.7 Adverbs

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. As we see in examples (1) and (2), the same word in the same phonological form may function as an adverb, an adjective, or a noun, as is the case in many Mongolian languages and dialects. Some of the usual means by which an adverb is derived from a noun is by suffixing instrumental case markers or other nominal suffixes.

- (1) *manar-ee nutag maši sayxan*
 we(EXC)-GEN native place very beautiful
 ‘Our native land is very beautiful.’
- (2) *üngür-sün šün ta sayxan noyrso-bo uu*
 pass-VNP night 2POL well sleep-PAS INT
 ‘Did you sleep well last night?’
- (3) *nuuc-aar*
 secret-INS
 ‘secretly’
- (4) *bi ganc-aar-aa yaba-gtbi*
 I single-INS-REF go-POL
 ‘I will go by myself.’
- (5) *bolgamj-tee yaba-aareegtii*
 caution-having go-POL

‘Watch out! (lit. ‘Go with caution!’)

3.2.1.8 Postpositions

There are certain words that come after nominals and verbal nouns, and are governed by various cases.

(1) boroo oro-ko-oos ümün yaba
rain enter-VNF-ABL before go

‘Go before it rains’

(2) üd-əəs ümün
noon-ABL before

‘before noon’

(3) üd-əəs xoyš
noon-ABL after

‘afternoon’

(4) kədən konog-ee ümün dulaakan bay-san
several day-GEN before warm be-VNP

‘It was warm just several days ago.’

Words of this part of speech found in the data are /adilkan/ ‘alike’, /boltol/ ‘up to’, /daraa/ ‘after’, /dээр/ ‘on, above’, /dooro/ ‘below, under’, /dotoro/ ‘in, inside’, /gadaa/ ‘out, outside’, /garee/ ‘over’, /koin/ ‘after’, /kürtər/ ‘until’, /orčim/ ‘around, about’, /šig/ ‘like, as’, /tukay/ ‘about’, /tüləə/ ‘for’.

3.2.1.9 Particles

Negative, interrogative, concessive, corroborative, affirmative, speculative, emphatic, and modal particles are identified in the data. Negative particles are discussed in section 3.3.3. (Negation). Interrogative particles are discussed in section 3.3.4. (Interrogatives). For the concessive particle see 3.2.1.5.6 (Indefinite pronouns).

(1) galt tərэг күдүлэ-xə cag aray bol-oo-gүй
train move-VNF time rather become-VNI-NEG

bij dæə
COR AFF

‘It is not yet the time for the departure of the train.’

- (2) gər-ee-xən tany бүгүд bayartee bay-na
house-GEN-COL 2PL all happy be-PRE
bij əə
COR SPE

‘All of the family members must be happy.’

- (3) tiiməə düü-g бүгүд l külyee-ji-nə
yes younger brother-ACC all EMP wait-PRO-PRE
‘Yes, the whole family is waiting for him.’

3.2.1.10 Interjections

The following interjection words are found in the data.

- (1) jaa nokoy-goo kori-yi
INT dog-REF detain-VOL
‘Oh, yes. Restrain your dog please! (lit. ‘Well, let us keep down your dog!’)
- (2) xæg ono-čix-loo
INT hit-COM-PAS
‘Oh, I hit it!’

3.3 Syntactic description

3.3.1 Word order

The principal word order of the sentence is Subject-Object-Predicate. Although we do not find any evidence of exceptions to this principle in the data, word ordering must be relatively free, considering that every constituent of a sentence has certain devices which mark its role in the sentence and its relationships

with other constituents.

- (1) aba many mod-oor nom-ee širee kii-bə
 father 1PL wood-INS book-GEN table make-PAS
 ‘Our father made a table with wood.’

3.3.2 Conjunctions

3.3.2.1 Phrasal conjunctions

Phrases are conjoined by conjunction words such as /ba/ ‘and’, /bolon/ ‘and’, /təgəəd/ ‘then, thus’ The numeral /xoyor/ ‘two’ functions as a conjunction word after the second of the two nominals.

- (1) suragči ba bagš
 pupil and teacher
 ‘a pupil and a teacher’
- (2) boro gürəəs bolon buga bay-na
 roe deer and deer be-PRE
 ‘There are roe deer and deer.’
- (3) ijii aba xoyor yari-lca-jii-na
 mother father two talk-REC-PRO-PRE
 ‘Mother and father are talking to each other.’
- (4) aba ijii əkənər təgəəd okin kübüün bii
 fater mother wife then daughter son be(PRE)
 ‘There is my father, mother, wife, then daughter and son.’

3.3.2.2 Sentential conjunctions

3.3.2.2.1 Coordination

Coordination takes place between two independent clauses with or without the conjunction word. In example (1), there is no coordinator but two sentences are semantically well connected. In example (2) the adverb /əsbəl/ ‘if not’ functions as the coordinator. Such coordinators as /əsbəl/ ‘if not’, /gəbči/ ‘but’, /karin~xarin/

‘however’.

- (1) əmbəə oroos-oos ir-əə gü
 grandmother Russia-ABL come-PAS INT
 šaŋkay-gaas ir-əə gü
 China-ABL come-PAS INT

‘Did your grandmother come from Russia or China?’

- (2) ik bay-na gü əsbəl бага bay-na gü
 much be-PRE INT if not little be-PRE INT

‘Is it a lot or a little? (lit. Is it (your urine) a lot? If not a little?)’

3.3.2.2.2 Subordination

The most prevalent means of expressing subordination is through the use of grammatical suffixes that are attached to the verbal stem of the predicate verb of the dependent clause, also called a converb, as we discussed in the morphology section. An example is given in (1).

- (1) ulaanbaatar-aas mürüŋ dayr-aad
 Ulaanbaatar(place)-ABL Mürüŋ(place) pass-CONP
 ir-sən-bi
 come-VNP-1

‘I came out from Ulaanbaatar and dropped by at Murun on the way here.’

Adverbial phrases are another device for subordination, as we can see in example (2).

- (2) aba-iig ir-xə-d ny nom унši-ји-san-bi
 father-ACC come-VNF-DL 3 book read-PRO-VNP-1
 ‘When father came back, I was reading book (=studying).’

Another mean of coordination is to embed by suffixing morphemes to the verbal stem, to make the predicate of the embedded sentence a verbal noun as in example (3).

- (3) bi үчүгүдүр ab-san nom-oo унši-ba-bi
 I yesterday take-VNP book-REF read-PAS-1

‘I read a book that I bought yesterday.’

It seems that quotations that use a conjugated form of the verb /gə-/ ‘to say’ are also a remarkable method for coordination, as in example (4).

- (4) bi aab-iig ir-bəl goyi axaa gə-ǰ
 I father-ACC com-CONC nice SPE say-CONI
 bodo-bo-bi
 think-PAS-1
 ‘I thought it would have been nice if father had come.’

3.3.3 Negation

Negation is marked by negative particles. The following particles are identified in the data.

Negative markers	Remarks
-(ü)güy	placed after nominals, verbal nouns, finite verbs
biš	placed after nominals
büü	placed before imperative-optative verbs
bitgii	placed before imperative-optative verbs

When the object of negation is existence, /-(ü)güy/ is placed after the verbal noun or the noun, as in example (1a) and (1b). The striking difference in negation from that of Khalkha is shown in example (1c) where the indicative verbs are negated by the negative marker /-güy/. /-(ü)güy/ is used for sentential negation like the English negative reply “No!”, as in (1d).

- (1a) manuus tanar-iig jodo-xo-güy-bid
 we(EXC) you(PL)-ACC beat-VNF-NEG-1PL
 ‘We will not beat you (PL).’

- (1b) mašiin ügüy bolkoor ündürkaan kürtər
 car NEG as a result Undurkhaan upto
 ažil-d yaba-xa-d kəjuu bay-na
 work-DL go-VNF-DL difficult be-PRE
 ‘It is difficult to commute to Undurkhaan without a car.’
- (1c) üngü ny sətgəl-d taala-gda-na-güy
 color 3 mind-DL like-PM-PRE-NEG
 ‘I do not like the color. (lit. The color is not favored (by me).)’
- (1d) či ücügüdür surguuli-d-aa yaba-aa-güy
 you yesterday school-DL-REF go-PAS-NEG
 bij či ügüy yaba-laa l
 COR 2 NEG go-PAS EMP
 ‘You did not go to school yesterday, did you? Oh, I did go.’

When the object of negation is quality or content, /biš/ is placed after the nominal, including adjectives, as in examples (2a) and (2b).

- (2a) bi suragči biš-bi
 I pupil NEG-1
 ‘I am not a pupil.’
- (2b) tər üy-d tər küüg xaraaxan kærkən biš
 that time-DL that child barely pretty NEG
 bay-san
 be-VNP
 ‘That child was not pretty at that time.’

When the verb is in the imperative-optative mood, the negative marker /büü/ or /bitgii/ is placed before the verb as in (3a) and (3b).

- (3a) tər alim-iig büü id
 that apple-ACC NEG eat
 ‘Do not eat that apple!’
- (3b) tərən-iig bitgii jod-ooree
 he-ACC NEG beat-PRE
 ‘Do not beat him!’

3.3.4 Interrogatives

In “Yes/No questions”, the interrogative particle /gü/ is placed at the end of the sentence as in example (1a), which has the same phonological shape as that of Buryat’s interrogative particle. However, Khalkha type /-uu/ occasionally appears as in (1b), probably because of the Khalkha influence.

(1a) *či ücügüdür surguuli-d-aa yaba-san-či gü*
 you yesterday school-DL-REF go-VNP-2 INT
 ‘Did you go to school yesterday?’

(1b) *ta sayn bay-na-t gü sayn ta*
 you(POL) good be-PRE-2POL INT good you(POL)
sayn bay-na üü
 good be-PRE INT
 ‘How do you do? I am fine. How do you do?’

In “Wh-word questions”, the interrogative particle /-be/ is placed at the end of the sentence as in (2) and (3). However, it is often dropped, even when the predicate is nominal as in (4). It has allomorphs [-be] and [-we]. The former occurs after the consonants /-b/, /-m/, and /-n/ as is the case in Khalkha.

(2) *käntee aymag kädii-d*
 Khentii aimag(place) how many-DL
bay-guula-gda-san be
 be-CM-PM-VNP INT
 ‘In which year, was Khentii *aimag* established?’

(3) *käntee aymag-ee nutag dæbsgär-ee kəmjee*
 Khentii aimag(place)-GEN territory-GEN size
kär be
 how INT
 ‘What is the size of the territory of Khentii *aimag*?’

(4) *ta yamar mærgäjil-tee-t*
 you(POL) what kind of profession-having-2POL
 ‘What kind of profession are you in?’

Interrogative pronouns such as /ali/ ‘which’, /kaaguur/ ‘where, (along) which way’, /kaan~xaan/ ‘where’, /kaašaa~kaašaa/ ‘to where’, /kăčineen/ ‘how much’, /kəd(ən)/ ‘how many’, /kəddüggər/ ‘which one (in a series)’, /kədiid/ ‘when’, /kəjəə/ ‘when’, /kən/ ‘who’, /kər/ ‘how, to what extent’, /yamar/ ‘what kind of’, and /yuu/ ‘what’ are indispensable for “WH-word questions”.

3.3.5 Passive

Although we do not have much evidence in the data, it is possible to state that passivity is expressed by the construction “nominal phrase-DL + verbal stem-PM/-gda-”, as we can see in examples (1b) and (2b). Consultants often chose different verbs from the active construction to make the passive construction as we see in (1a) and (1b).

(1a) aŋčin tuulay abala-ba
 hunter rabbit hunt-PAS
 ‘A hunter hunted a rabbit.’

(1b) tuulay aŋčin-d bari-gda-ba
 rabbit hunter-DL catch-PM-PAS
 ‘A rabbit was caught by a hunter.’

It seems that the “Noun Phrase-DL” part of the passive construction may be omitted when it is already evident, as we see in (2b).

(2a) bi koŋkon-ee duu soŋso-(o)o-bi
 I bell-GEN sound hear-PAS-1
 ‘I heard a bell sound.’

(2b) alasa-d koŋkon-ee duu soŋso-gda-ba
 far-DL bell-GEN sound hear-PM-PAS
 ‘From far away, a bell sound was heard.’

Sometimes, passive marker comes with causative marker simply yielding the passive meaning as in (3).

- (3) kəntee aymag kədii-d
 Khentii aimag(place) how many-DL
 bay-guula-gda-san be
 be-CM-PM-VNP INT
 ‘In which year, was Khentii *aimag* established?’

3.3.6 Causative

Causativity is expressed by infixing the causative markers /-uula-/, /-lga-/, and /-aa-/ to the verbal stem.

- (1a) bi us abčira-aa-bi
 I water bring-PAS-1
 ‘I brought water.’
- (1b) ijii namaar us abčira-uula-ba
 mother I(INS) water bring-CM-PAS
 ‘My mother made me bring water.’
- (2a) /ongoyxo/ ‘to open (up)/to be opened’
 (2b) /ongoylgoxo/ ‘to open’
 (3a) /üldəkə/ ‘to remain, to stay, to be left behind’
 (3b) /üldəkə/ ‘to keep, to retain’

Consultants often chose different verbs from the active construction to make the causative construction as we see (4a) and (4b).

- (4a) minyee düü surguuli-d-aa oči-bo
 I-GEN younger brother school-DL-REF go-PAS
 ‘My younger brother went to (his own) school.’
- (4b) ijii düü-g surguuli-d ny
 mother younger brother-ACC school-DL 3
 yaba-uul-ba
 go-CM-PAS
 ‘(My) mother let (my) younger brother go to his own school.’

APPENDICES

Appendix 1

Vocabulary

1. Words are listed in the following order: a, b(=/p/), c(=/ts^h/), č(=/tʃ^h/), d(=/t/), e, ə, g(=/k/), i, j(=/ts/), j̄(=/tʃ/), k(=/k^h/), l, ł, m, n, ŋ, o, ö, p(=/p^h/), r(=/r/), s, š(=/ʃ/), t(=/t^h/), u, ü, w, x, y.
2. Each word is presented with the following information:
Phonological transcription # Meaning (supplement)
3. Ar. = Arabic; Bu. = Khori Buryat; Ch. = Chinese; Ev. = Evenki; Fr. = French; Ja. = Japanese; Ka. = Kalmyk; Kh. = Khalkha; Ko. = Korean; Ma. = Manchu; Ru. = Russian; Sa. = Sanskrit; Ti. = Tibetan; WM = Written Mongolian; ☞ = See also

/a/

aab father, dad (Kh. aab) ☞ aba

aaginta (small) shop (< Ru. агéнт ‘agent’) (Kh. агент; Bu. агент; WM agyent)

aaǰugu slow (in action) (Kh. аажуу; WM аҗајиγу) ☞ aaǰuu

aaǰuu slow in action, gentle of slope (Kh. аажуу; WM аҗајиγу) ☞ aaǰugu

aalja spider (Kh. аалз; Bu. аалза; WM аҗалја)

aba¹ father, dad (Bu. аба) ☞ aab

aba² hunting

- abaačika** to take, to take away, to go off with (Kh. аваачих; Bu. абаашаха; WM abačiqu)
- abaceer** officer (< Ru. офицер) (Kh. офицер [afitse:r]; Bu. офицер; WM opičer) ☞ oboceer
- abag axay** father's brother (Kh. авга ах; Bu. абга ахай; WM абага аq-а)
- abag эгцее нүхүр** father's sister's husband ☞ abaga эгцiin нүхүр
- abag эгцiin нүхүр** father's sister's husband ☞ abag эгцее нүхүр
- abagaldee** snake (It may just be a confused reply from our consultant) (Kh. авгалдай 'larva, grub, nymph'; Bu. абгалдай 'larva, grub, nymph'; WM абагалдай 'larva, chrysalis')
- abagaljin¹** wife of father's brother; It looks like it is a combination of *abaga* 'father's sibling' and the feminine marker *-ljin*. (Kh. авга бэргэн 'wife of father's brother'; Bu. абга бэригэн 'id.'; WM абаг-а берген 'id.') ☞ abagaljin²
- abagaljin²** father's sister. (Kh. авга эгч 'father's sister'; Bu. абга эгшэ 'id.'; WM абаг-а егэцi 'id.') Our consultant has *abag эгцее нүхүр* and *abag эгцiin нүхүр*, both for 'father's sister's husband'. It is therefore quite possible for her to have *abag эгц* 'father's sister' too, which is the Khamnigan variant of Khalkha авга эгч. ☞ abgaljin¹
- abaruxu** to rescue, to save (Kh. аврах; Bu. абарха; WM aburaqu)
- abčirka** to bring
- abdara** chest, trunk, box
- abiyaas** talent, gift. (Kh. авьяас; Bu. абьяас; WM abiyas)
- abxu** to take, to get (Kh. авах; Bu. абаха; WM abqu)
- ačaa buulgaxa** to unload the load
- ačaanee tэрэг** lorry, truck
- ačee** luggage, load (Kh. ачаа; Bu. ашаа; WM аčiy-а) ☞ ачаа in ачаа буулгaxа and ачаанee тэрэг.
- ači küü** grandson (Kh. ач хүү; Bu. аша хүбүүн; WM аči күbeгiүн)
- ači ükin** granddaughter (Kh. ач охин; Bu. аша басаган; WM аči ökin)
- ačika** to load (Kh. ачих; Bu. ашаха; WM аčiqu)
- ačixa** to load (Kh. ачих; Bu. ашаха; WM аčiqu)

- ada** devil, demon (Kh. ад; Bu. ада; WM ada)
adilkan same (Kh. адилхан; Bu. адлихан; WM adaliqan)
aduguusun amitan wild beast
adura ceiling (Kh. адар; WM adar/adair)
aduučin [at̪ɔ:ɕʰiŋ] horse breeder
aduun sürüg horse herd
agaar air (Kh. агаар; Bu. агаар; WM аҕар)
agaari air (Kh. агаар; Bu. агаар; WM аҕар)
agaraad field attached to a home site, kitchen garden (< Ru. оропо'д)
agi wormwood, mugwort, artemisia
agšeesan cagaan будаа boiled rice (Kh. агшаасан цагаан будаа)
agšixa to contract, to shrink ⇨ хaгšixa
agtu араа wisdom tooth
agtulusan mori gelding
agtulux to geld, to castrate
aguu ik great (Kh. агуу их; WM аҕуу yeke)
aguulga content, contents
aguy cave
ajaragan takyee rooster, cock
ajarogo stallion
ajo jirgal happiness
ajo jirgalaŋ happiness
ajo jirgalatee happy, lucky
ajo muutee unlucky
ajogüy unhappy, unlucky
ajotee lucky
aјiglaxa to observe
aјil work
aјilee üdür workday
aјillaxa to work
aјilsaga diligent
aka 1. older (than) 2. elder brother
akay elder brother
alaga bolko to disappear

- alagadaxu** to slap
alagtuu jackdaw
alaku to kill
alasee xaraguy long way
alaxu hammer
alban aĵil official business, public duty
alban bayguulga government and public offices
alban gajar public office, office
alban kaagĉi official, government employee
alban xaagĉi official, government employee
aldaa mistake
aldaa üg slip of the tongue
aldar name
aldar nər fame
aldartee famous, well-known
aldu distance between the tips of the middle fingers of the two
hands extended to either side
algu palm ^{ᠠᠯᠭᠤ} xalgu
alguurlaxa to delay
alima apple
aliris cowberry
alkuxa to walk
altay¹ seemingly, apparently
altay² Altai mountains
altu gold
am bül family member
amalalt promise ^{ᠠᠮᠠᠯᠠᠯᠲᠤ} xamalalt
amalaxa to promise, to pledge
amar amagalaŋ peaceful, quiet
amarag lover
amaralt rest
amaraltiin üdür holiday
amarkan easy
amaruk to take a rest
amasuxu to taste

- ambuura** warehouse (< Ru. амбар) (Kh. амбаар; Bu. амбаар)
amdiral living, life (Kh. амьдрал; Bu. амидарал; WM amidural)
amdiraku to live, to reside, to dwell
ami life
amia koroloxo to commit suicide
amid bodis living being
amidraka to live, to reside, to dwell
amidrax to live, to reside, to dwell
amidraxa to live, to reside, to dwell
amisgal breath
amisgalka to breathe
amitan animal
amitanee sabar claw
amjilt success
amjilt gargaxu to succeed
amjixa to succeed doing something in time
amta taste
amta ügüy tasteless
amttay delicious
amu mouth
amu cangoxo to be thirsty
amuguy bit (harness) (Kh. амгай; WM амаγай)
anda friend (Kh. анд; Bu. анда; WM anda)
anduu friend (Kh. анд; Bu. анда; WM anda)
anisga eyelid
anjis plough
anjisduxu to plow
anyəxu to close the eyes
aŋ hunting
aŋ amitan game animal
aŋ aŋnuur hunting
aŋčin hunter ⇨ aŋquučin
aŋgaakay fledgling, nestling
aŋgay üs fur
aŋgay üsəer kiisən kubcas fur clothes

- aṅgay üsəer kiisən palitoo** fur coat ⇨ paltoo
aṅgi class 2337
aṅguučin hunter (Bu. аңгуушан) ⇨ aṅčin
aṅguučin kutaga hunting knife
aṅkaarku to pay attention to
aṅkiluun fragrant, aromatic
aṅnax to hunt
ara tala in the back, in the rear
araa šidü molar tooth
araajü radio (< Ru. радио)
araban sayi ten million
arabay barley
arabdugaar sar October
arago means, method, way (Our Khalkha member, Pürevsüren's
pronunciation was near to [aräk].)
aramo novel (< Ru. рома'н)
arba ten
arbaas dooš less than ten
arbaas duuš more than ten
arbadugaar tenth
arban doloo seventeen
arban dürb fourteen
arban gurba thirteen
arban jurgaa sixteen
arban koyor twelve
arban koyor nuglaa gədəs [arwəŋ kʰəjər noŋlaa kətəs] duodenum
arban koyordugaar sar December
arban miṅgu ten thousand ⇨ arban myəŋga, tümə
arban myəŋga ten thousand ⇨ arban miṅgu, tümə
arban naym eighteen
arban nəgə eleven
arban nəgədügəer eleventh
arban nəgəsügəer sar November
arban taba fifteen
arban yüs nineteen

arbo ten

arčixa to wipe, to rub, to wipe off

ard tümün people, masses

argamĵaa tether

argul dried cattle dung (Kh. аргул; Bu. аргул; WM argal)

arık spirits, strong drink ☞ ariki, arki

ariki spirits, strong drink ☞ arık, arki

arılǵaxu to get rid of, to sweep away, to remove

arılĵaa barter, trade

arisu skin

arisu šir leather

arısun kubcas leather clothes

ariutǵaxa to disinfect, to purify, to clean up

arık spirits, strong drink ☞ arık, ariki

arık ǵarxa to become sober

arsoloŋ lion (Kh. арслан; Bu. арсалан; WM arslan~arsalan)

arula shaft (of a cart)

aruula island

asga rock

asuuk to ask

asuult question

asuuxu to turn on (a light, a machine, etc.)

asuxu to catch fire, to ignite, to start burning

asxaj čutǵaxa to spill, to pour

ašig profit, gain

ašig ǵarku to profit, to gain

ašig orolog profit

ašigtay profitable, beneficial

atan tәмәә castrated he-camel

axa to be, to exist

axay düü (elder and younger) brothers, elder brother and younger
sister

ayaarkan slow, gentle

ayaga bowl, cup

ayaganeе alčuur dish towel, dish-cloth

ayaku to be afraid of (Kh. айх; Бу. айха; WM аyуqu/ayiqу)
ayaŋga thunder
ayaŋga buuk to thunder
ayaŋga buux to thunder
ayilaka to sing, to hum
ayilal journey, expedition, travel
ayilčlax to visit
ayilguu dialect, melody
ayinčin wayfarer, traveler
ayindaa automatically, naturally, in the course of things
aymag province, *aimag*
aymaxay timid, coward, fearful
aymdraka to live, to reside, to dwell
aymšigtay fearful
ayuul ügüy safe
ayuultay dangerous

/b/

baabgay bear
baaka to excrete
baakalday bear (Бу. баахалдай)
baambaru torch (Kh. бамбар)
baara¹ pot ☞ *waara*
baara² roof tile
baasaŋ garigi Friday (< Ti. pa-sangs + Sa. graha)
baasu excrement (WM *baγasu*)
baatura hero (Kh. баатар; Бу. баатар; WM *baγatur*)
bačiməduu impatient, hasty, flustered, worried, confused ☞
 bačimyəduu
bačimyəduu impatient, hasty, flustered, worried, confused ☞
 bačiməduu
badayrxax to tingle, to have pins and needles ☞ *bodayrx* (Kh.
 бадайрах; WM *badayiraqu*)

- bag¹** mask
- bag²** the administrative unit under a *sum*.
- bagā balčir** young, tender, infant
- bagāji** tool, implement
- bagasuxa** to decrease, to decline (Kh. барасах; WM baγasqu)
- baglaa** bundle
- bagš** teacher
- bagšlax** to teach
- bagteer** bacteria (< Ru. бакте́рия) (Kh. бактери Бу. бактери)
- bagtuux** to include in (Kh. багтаах)
- bagu** little, small
- bagun** pillar (Kh. багана; Бу. бахана; WM baγan-a)
- baja [patsa]** husband of a sister of one's wife (Kh. баз; Бу. база; WM baǰa)
- baka** frog (Kh. бах; Бу. баха; WM baq-a)
- baki** pincers ^{ᠪᠠᠵᠢ} bakye
- bakiraka** to shout, to scream
- bakiryəka** to shout, to scream
- bakye** pincers ^{ᠪᠠᠵᠢ} baki
- balčig** swamp, marsh
- balkarxu** to admire, to be proud of (It may be simple pronunciation error)
- bandaŋ sandul** bench, chair, stool
- banja** board, plank (Kh. банз; Бу. банза; WM bangja)
- banjul [pantsoɭ]** skirt (< Sa. Tī. pancali) (Kh. банзал; Бу. банзал; WM baŋjal)
- banka [paŋk^hǰ]** bank (a institute for saving, loan, etc.) (< Ru. банк) (Kh. банк; Бу. банк; WM bangki)
- baraa** goods, merchandise
- barag** almost
- bardamnuxu [pardamnɔxɔ]** to brag, to boast (Kh. бардамнах; Бу. бардамлаха; WM bardamnaqu)
- barika** to catch ^{ᠪᠠᠷᠢᠬᠠ} barixa
- barilgu bayšiŋ** building
- barimal** sculpture, statue ^{ᠪᠠᠷᠢᠮᠢᠯ} barimjəl

- barimtlaku** to follow, to act according to, to adhere to, to stick to
barimyəl sculpture, statue ⇔ barimal
barixa to catch ⇔ barika
barixu¹ to restrain, to hold
barixu² to pick up
bariyəxu to build (a house) ⇔ baryəxu
baru tiger
baruun right, west
baruun tal right side, west side
baruun tald in the right side, in the west side
baruun tuuše to the right, rightward
baruunta in the west
baryəxu to build (a house) ⇔ bariyəxu
basa also
basamjilaxa to look down on, to scorn, to despise
bat бүкү firm, solid, strong
battay definite, firm, reliable, solid
baxaduxu to be proud, to be pleased
baxalajuura pharynx
baxarkuxu to admire, to be proud of (Kh. бахархах)
baxdux to be proud, to be pleased (Kh. бахдах)
bayanbүrd oasis
bayar күргэхэ to congratulate
bayar naasam [pajär na:sam] festival (Kh. баяр наадам; Bu. [баяр] наадан; WM bayar naγadum)
bayar yosolee үдүр national holiday
bayarlaxu to be happy, to be glad, to be pleased
bayartee bayku glad, happy, pleased
bayartee үйл yabadal joyous event
bayastuku to be glad, to be happy, to be pleased (Kh. баярлах)
bayсәэх to investigate (Kh. байцаах)
baydal state, condition, situation
bayguulka to build, to construct
bayin күн rich person
bayku to be, to exist, to have ⇔ bayxa

- bayldagč** soldier (Kh. байлдагч ‘private (military rank)’)
bayn uu Hello?
bayrlal location
bayšij house, building
bayxa to be, to exist, to have ⇔ bayku
bayxa ügüy not to be, not to exist, not to have ⇔ bayxağüy
bayxağüy not to be, not to exist, not to have ⇔ bayxa ügüy
bəlyee gloves
bəlbisən əkənər widow
bəlbisən ərə widower
bəlcəər pasture ⇔ bolčeer
bəlcəerlüülkə to pasture (Kh. бэлчээрлэх) ⇔ bilčeerlüülkə
bələg present, gift
bələg dursgal souvenir
bələgləx to present
bələn colkoob cash ⇔ mələn colkoob
bəlgee karicaa sexual intercourse
bəljiğ (finger) ring (Kh. бөлзөг)
bəlküüs waist
bəltgəx to prepare
bəri bride
bəri düü husband’s younger brother’s wife
bəri okin daughter-in-law
bəriğən elder brother’s wife
bəriğən əgəči husband’s elder brother’s wife
bətgee do not (Negative imperative marker) (Kh. битгий; WM bitegei)
bəyə body ⇔ biiyə
bəyə jasaxa gajar toilet
bəyəd abč yabaxa to carry a thing with one
bi I (1st person singular)
bicgan little, small, young
bicixan little, small, young
bicixan küüg baby, little child
bičigee širee desk

- bičikə** to write
bid we (hearer exclusive)
bidroo pail, bucket (< Ru. ведро)
bii to be, to exist
biičin guest ⇄ giičin
biir writing brush ⇄ birə
biiyə body ⇄ bəyə
bij no doubt, surely
bilčeerlüülkə to pasture (Kh. бэлчээрлэх) ⇄ bəlčeerlüülkə
bilčeekə to graze, to pasture
bimba garigi Saturday (< Ti. spen-pa + Sa. graha) (Kh. бямба гариг; Bu. бимба гараг; WM bimba gray) ⇄ bimbyo garigi
bimbyo garigi Saturday (Kh. бямба гариг Bu. бимба гараг WM bimba gray) ⇄ bimba garigi
birə writing brush ⇄ biir
bodaŋ gakay boar (Kh. бодон гахай Bu. бодон гахай WM bodong γaqai)
bodayrx [pəde:rx] to tingle, to have pins and needles ⇄ badayrxа
boditee barimt fact, real fact
bodoko to think
bodol thought, idea, opinion ⇄ bojol
bogin ištee jəətüü weeding hoe
bogin xugacaa short term
boginokon short
bogsog trash
bojol thought, idea, opinion ⇄ bodol
bokir usnee koolee drain ⇄ bokir usnee xoolee
bokir usnee xoolee drain ⇄ bokir usnee koolee
bokirloxo to make dirty, to pollute
bolcuu arrowhead
bolčeer pasture ⇄ bəlčээр
bolenyec hospital (< Ru. больница)
bolobsorol education
bolobsrok to ripen ⇄ bolobsroxo
bolobsroxo to ripen ⇄ bolobsrok

- bolgoomjiloxo** to pay attention, to be careful
bologoomjiloxo to pay attention, to be careful
bolomj [pələmɟ] opportunity, possibility
boloxo [pələxə] to become
bolxo [pələxə] All right! (Kh. Болно!)
bolyəxo to stop, to give up (Kh. болих; WM boliqu)
boolo slave (Kh. боол)
boomto port, harbour
booxo to tie, to tie up, to bind, to bandage
borco *borts*, dried meat
bordoo¹ fertilizer, manure
bordoo² hay
bornee harrow (Kh. борной)
boro gürəəs roe deer
boro gürəəsnee myaka roe deer's meat
boro šibuu sparrow
borogoxo to bark (For a dog)
boroneetxo to harrow (Kh. борнойдох)
boroо rain
boroо oroko to rain
boroond noroxo to get wet by rain, to be exposed to rain
boroonee uliral rainy season
bosgo threshold of a door, doorsill
bosgoxo to erect
bosoko to stand
botogo camel calf
bömbärə drum ⇔ bömbörə
bömbörə drum ⇔ bömbärə
böö shaman
bööljik to vomit (Kh. бөөлжих)
bööljis vomit (Kh. бөөлжис)
böön yümə lump (Kh. бөөн юм)
böörə kidney (Kh. бөөр; Bu. бөөрэ; WM böger-e)
böösö lice (Kh. бөөс)
bucaaj ügük to give back, to send back

- bucaj irək** to come back
bucaj yabak to go back
bucalagasan us boiled water
bucramee hot as boiled water, boiling (Kh. буцлам)
budaa grain, cereals
budaga dye stuffs, dyes, color, paint (liquid color)
budaj šinkudaxa to make up, to make one's toilet (Kh. будаж шунхдах)
budaŋ mist, haze
budaxa to dye
buga 1. deer 2. buck ⇨ caa bugu
bugay aris deer skin, buckskin
bugay cusan əbür young antlers of the deer
bugay myaka venison
buguy wrist
buguybč bracelet
bujara dirty
buka gürəəs aurochs
buku bull
bulaan əjəlkə to invade, to encroach
bulaaxa to rob, to capture, to take over
bulag spring, fountain
bulaga sable (Kh. булга; Bu. булган; WM bulay-a)
bulaka to bury
bulama a flattened cake
bulan¹ corner
bulan² gulf, bay
bulčij¹ muscle ⇨ buldičij
bulčij² calf of the leg
buldičij muscle (It may be a simple pronunciation error) ⇨ bulčij
buliŋgyərtee turbid, cloudy (Kh. булингартай)
bulš tomb
buluu cagaan jagas carp
buma hundred thousand
burgaas willow, salix

- buruu** wrong
busad kün other people
butalaxa to boil (intransitive) (Kh. буцлах)
butalgaxa to boil (transitive) (Kh. буцалгах)
butarxay powder
buu gun
buudaka to fire, to shoot
buuj irxə to come down, to descend
buuka to dismount (from a horse)
buulgaј tabixa to put down ⇔ buulgaј tabyəxa
buulgaј tabyəxa to put down ⇔ buulgaј tabixa
buunee ama muzzle of a gun
buura camel stallion (Kh. буур; Bu. буура; WM buyura)
buurcaga bean
buurcaganeе xalis bean pod
buuritay thorough, serious, considerable, courteously 2608
buuxa to stay at, to stop at
buylxa to bellow (Kh. буйлах; Bu. буйлаха; WM buyilaqu)
büdürkə to stumble
büdüün thick, big
büdüün gədəs large intestine
bügdeek to bend (Kh. бөгтийх)
bügs all (Kh. бүгд; Bu. бүгэдэ; WM бүгүде) ⇔ бүгүд
bügsü buttocks (Kh. бөгс; Bu. бүгсэ; WM бөгсе)
bүгүд all (Kh. бүгд; Bu. бүгэдэ; WM бүгүде) ⇔ бүгс
bүгүјiləkə to ring, to wear a ring, to put a ring on (Kh. бөгжлөх)
bүгүləxə to block up (Kh. бөглөх)
bүјig dance
bүјigləkə to dance
bүlүgə group
bүlyeen tepid, lukewarm
bүmbəgü ball (Kh. бөмбөг; Bu. бүмбэгэ; WM бөmbөge)
bүmbərcүg ball, sphere, globe (Kh. бөмбөрцөг; Bu. бүмбэрсэг;
 WM бөmbөрцөг)
bүmbərkə to roll

bürəə bugle

büргэд eagle

bүридэхэ to be made up of, to consist of, to comprise (Kh. бүрдэх; бүридэхэ; WM бүридкү)

bүриi very, extremely, much more (Kh. бүрий; Бу. бүри; WM бүри)

bүрин completely, fully (Kh. бүрэн; Бу. бүрин; WM бүрин)

bүркэг үдүр cloudy day

bүркэкэ to overcast (weather)

bүс дабуу clothe

bүсэ sash, belt

bүсэ тэlee belting, sash, belt, girdle

bүтүлгүйдэхэ to fail

bүтүлгүйдүл failure (Kh. бүтэлгүйдэл)

bүйлэ gum, teeth ridge

byalkam full (Kh. бялхам 'almost overflow')

byalkaxa to overflow (Kh. бялхах/бялхуулах/бялхаах)

/с/

саа bugu reindeer ☞ buga

саас paper

сабуу glue

сасаха to scatter, to sprinkle, to spray ☞ саcуху

сакура a large cloth tent usually rectangular in shape

саcуху to scatter, to spray, to sprinkle ☞ сасаха

саg¹ time

саg² watch, clock

саg агаari weather

сагаан white

сагаан будаа rice

сагаан гаа ginger

сагаан куc birch tree

сагаан тугулга tin

- cagdaa** police officer
cagdaagee gajar police station
cakilgaan¹ electricity
cakilgaan² lightning
cakilgaan utasa telegram, telegraph
cakuur bat, beater ☞ cokuuur
caliṅ püṅlüü pay, wages, salary
camca shirt ☞ samca
carcaa locust
carialga pretty, good looking (Kh. царайлаг)
caru tray
carus oak tree
cas snow
cas oroxo to snow
casan šüürg snow storm
casaxa to be full (of one's stomach) (Kh. цадах; Bu. садаха; WM čadqu)
casnee nuraṅgi snowslide, avalanche of snow
caxilgaan cakilaka to strike (lightning)
cay tea
caybar yagaan light pink
caynee ayaga teacup, tea bowl
ceg təmdəg punctuation mark ☞ cəg təmdəg
cəbər bolko to become clean, to become clear
cəbəri clean, pure
cəbərləkə to clean
cəcerilig garden
cəcəg flower ☞ cocəg, cocügə
cəcəg əbüčün smallpox ☞ übčün
cəcəgləx to flower, to bloom, to blossom
cəcəgneə bulcuu bud, button (Kh. цэцгийн булцуу)
cəcən üg aphorism, proverb, saying
cəcərələgt küreeləṅ garden, park
cəəji breast, chest ☞ cuuji
cəəli pond

- cэг тэмдэг** punctuation mark ᠴᠡᠭ ᠲᠡᠮᠳᠡᠭ
cəlməg üdür fine day
cəlmək to clear up (weather)
cəŋker sky-blue
cərgee kuraŋ quarters, barracks, military camp
cərgi military ᠴᠡᠷᠭᠢ curg
cəri phlegm
сосэг flower ᠰᠣᠰᠡᠭ cəсэг, cocügə
сосүгэ flower ᠰᠣᠰᠦᠭᠡ cəсэг, cocəg
соѳихо to be surprised, to be startled
coglog delightful
coglog aylguu delightful melody
cokiuur bat, beater ᠴᠣᠬᠢᠭᠤᠷ cakuur
cokixu to strike, to beat
colkoob money (< Ru. целко'вый) 'a folk name for "ruble", from
the целковый рубль ("tselkovyi ruble"), i.e., a wholesome,
uncut ruble')
сөŋкo window
сооји lock
соојiloko to lock
сoolxo to pierce ᠴᠣᠣᠯᠬᠣ soolxo
corg soldier ᠴᠡᠷᠭᠢ cərgi
cuglaaŋ meeting, assembly, demonstration
cuglaxa to assemble, to gather together
cugluulka to collect
culbээрэ leading rein, tether (Kh. цулбуур)
curxay jagas pike (*Esux lucius*)
cusa blood
сууји breast, chest ᠰᠡᠭᠢ cəэји
суурга lock
суургал rumour, hearsay, gossip ᠰᠡᠭᠢ суурхал
суургалaxa to lock
суурхал rumour, hearsay, gossip ᠰᠡᠭᠢ суургал
cүсэ gall bladder ᠴᠦᠰᠡ cüsə
cүmүkə bag, briefcase, handbag (Kh. цүнх; Bu. сүүмхэ, Ru.

сумка)

cūs ixtə bold, brave**cūsə** gall bladder ⇔ cücə**cüücə** chisel

/č/

čadaxa to be able to, can (In grammar study, our native speaker pronounced in this form)**čadaxagüy** not to be able to, can not**čalčaka** to chatter, to jabber**čaŋga** tense, taut ⇔ čingga**čaŋgalaka** to tighten**čarmayx** to strive, to do one's best**čelwə** stone ⇔ čiluu**čenjüü** red pepper (< Chinese 秦椒[qínjiāu]) (Kh. чинжүү)**čəŋjüü** red pepper (< Chinese 秦椒[qínjiāu])**či** you (singular)**čiaatərə** theater (< Ru. теа́тр) (Our Khalkha team member's pronunciation was near to [tʰja:tär])**čicag aldaxu** to have diarrhea (Kh. чацга алдах WM čičaγ-a aldaqū)**čičirxa** to tremble, to quiver, to shake**čidalə** ability, capacity**čidaxa** to be able to, to can**čidünjə** match (Kh. чүдэнз; WM čüdengje)**čigčee kuruu** little finger**čigəərə** straight on, straight forward**čiiggəy xürs** dried soil**čiigləgə** wet, damp, moist**čikə** ear ⇔ čikü**čikəbč** ear cap**čikərləg** sweet**čiknee gədəs** earlobe

- čikü** ear ᠴᠢᠬᠦ čikə
čiluu stone ᠴᠢᠯᠠ čelwə
čiluun straight
čimee anirgüy quiet, silent
čimee šuugaa noise, din
čimee šuugaantee noisy
čimegləl ornamentation, decoration
čimegləxə to decorate, to ornament, to adorn
čindaga hare
činara quality
činaxa to boil ᠴᠢᠨᠬᠠ šinaxa
činii your
čino wolf
čingga tense, taut ᠴᠢᠩᠭᠠ čaᠩᠭa
čirga sleigh
čirgdəl trouble, nuisance, inconvenience
čirlə corpse ᠴᠢᠷᠯᠡ šaril
čirxu to drag
čisü goyjiko to bleed
čitgər devil, ghost, spook, ogre ᠴᠢᠲᠭᠦᠷ čitgür
čitgür devil, ghost, spook, ogre ᠴᠢᠲᠭᠦᠷ čitgər
čukalčilan küskə to solicit
čukula important
čulbuurt jagas sheat fish, cat fish
čuluun straight
čumuul mosquito
čurkuy [tʰörkʰy:] socks (Kh. оймс Ru. носки, Ev. наски/
 сун'уки, Ma. fomoci) (It is not identified in Mongolian, Tungus,
 and Russian dictionaries.)
čülə desert
čüləalkə to liberate, to free

/d/

daalgabar task, assignment**dabaa gariḡi** [tawā: kariyi] Monday (< Ti. zla-ba + Sa. graha)**dabaḡ karayku** to jump over**dabalgaa** wave**dabas** salt**dabas sulatee** not salty enough**dabasaga** (urinary) bladder**dabaxa** to cross over**dabčuu** narrow**dabkar** floor, story**dabšixa** to advance**dagabar bacagan** step daughter**dagabar kūbüün** step son**dagaxa** to follow, to accompany**daguulka** to lead, to be accompanied by, to cause to follow ☞
naguurka**daguulḡ irk** to bring (a person) along**daguulḡ yabaxa** to take (a person) along**daḡḡü** All right!, No problem!**daḡin** war ☞ dayn**dakeed** again**dakin¹** 1. ~ times, -fold 2. double**dakin²** again**dakyoo** signal (Kh. дохио; Bu. дохёо; WM dokiy-a)**dal** seventy**dalaḡ** dam, embankment**dalay** sea**dalayčin** seaman**dalayn ərgi** seaside**dalayn kaylaga** beach**dam üḡ** rumour, hearsay, gossip**damḡuura** ladder**daḡ modon ḡüür** single-log bridge

- daᅇdaa** always
daᅇka teapot, kettle
daraa later, next
daraačiin sara next month
daraagay next, following
daraagay sara next month
daraluxu to oppress
daraxu to suppress, to press
dari (gun) powder
darinee sabu cartridge
dasuxu to get used to
dašimag # water-bottle, flask
dašimyogo water-bottle, flask
dayčiluxu to mobilize
daylaka to entertain, to treat
dayn war 𐠣𐠣𐠣 dajin
dayrka to attack, to pass through
daysun enemy
dees up, upwards, above
des daraa [tis tara:] order (Kh. дэс дараа; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM des daray-a)
dəbəəridix to winnow
dəbəsgər mat, mattress, cover
dəbkərəg grasshopper
dəbtər notebook (< Ti. deb-ther)
dəbüür fan
dəəbri roof (Kh. дэвэр; WM degebüri)
dəəd šüid upper tooth
dəəd uruul upper lip
dəəgüür xubtas upper garment
dəəlsüülk to improve, to enhance, to raise
dəəri on, above
dəəšee upwards, above
dəgdəkəy chick
dəgəədəx to hook

- dəlbərxə** to explode
dələgəx to spread out
dələkee earth ⇄ dolokoy (Kh. дэлхий; Bu. дэлхэй; WM delekei)
dələŋ udder
dəlgəx to undo, to break up
dəlū mane
dəlūū spleen
dəmјix to support
dəŋ chain (It is unidentified in Mongolian dictionaries.)
dəŋ lamp (< Ch. 燈[dēng])
dəŋ buudal inn
dəŋgee toso lamp oil
dəŋlūū lantern (< Ch. 燈籠[dēnglong])
dərə pillow
dərgəd by, near
dərsən dəbəsger straw mat
dibaaјiin paradise
diildkə to lose, to be defeated
diiləkə to win, to defeat
dobtloko to attack, to rush forward
dogol corner
dogoloŋ kün lame person
dogšin fierce, savage, ruthless, violent
dokixo to signal
dolaan burkan Ursa major
doldugaar sar July ⇄ doloodugaar sar
dolgūūr shop, store
dolokoy world ⇄ dələkee (Kh. дэлхий; Bu. дэлхэй; WM delekei)
doloo seven
doloobor kuruu index finger, forefinger
doloodugaar sar July ⇄ doldugaar sar
dolooxo to lick
domči medical doctor
dood šidū lower tooth
dood uruul lower lip

- door** below, under
dooš down, downwards
doošee downwards, below
doree weak
dorilogo [tsʁilɔkɔ/tʁilɔkɔ] purpose, goal (May be a simple pronunciation error of jorilogo) ^{ᠳᠣᠷᠢᠯᠣᠭ᠎ᠠ} jorilogo
dorno east
doro xayaxad at least
dorod inferior, lowly, humble
dorogo badger
doromjiloko to insult, to humiliate, to scorn
dotogšee inwards
dotood tala inside, interior
dotoodo internal, inner
dotooj inner garment
dotorko inside, interior
dotoro in, inside
dotortee kubtas lined clothes
dotuur kubcas undergarments
dugaar number
duguy round, circle, bicycle, wheel
dulaakan warmly, kindly
dulaan warm
dulaanee kəm temperature
dulgiad omog Dulgiad clan (One of the Khamnigan clans). Appears also as [tɔlia:t ɔmɔk], [tɔlgia:t ɔmɔk], [tɔlgja:t ɔmɔk].
dund nasnii middle aged
dunda in the middle of
dunda kuruu middle finger, long finger
dundada middle, mid
duŋ kisaa sea shell, oyster
duragüy kürük to take a dislike to, to be fed up (with)
duragüycuk to dislike
durarlaxa to like, to be fond of, to love (May be a simple pronunciation error of duralaxa or durlaxa)

durtee liking, fond of
durtee bayku to like
duslaxa to drip, to dribble
dutagdaxa to be lacking, to be short of
dutuu bolgoston myaka undercooked meat
duu¹ song ⇌ nduu
duu² voice
duu abyee sound
duudaka to call
duugarxa to resound, to make a sound
duugay bayka to keep silent
duulaka¹ to hear
duulaka² to sing
duurayxa to copy, to imitate, to resemble
duusgaxa to finish, to end ⇌ duustaxa
duustaxa to finish, to end ⇌ duusgaxa
düci forty
düčidügær fortieth
düciäd forty odd, forty or so
düliiräk to become deaf
dülügæn gentle, quiet, peaceful
dülyee kün deaf person
dünčüür hundred millions
dügnæxə to draw a conclusion
dürbüdügær sar April
dürbüljin square (shape)
dürbünee nægə a quarter, one fourth
dürəə stirrup
dürüb four
dürübüdügær fourth
dütü jam shortcut
düü¹ younger brother
düü² younger sibling
düürəkə to be full ⇌ düüræxə
düürəŋ full

düürэхэ to be full ☞ **düürэкэ**

düürgэхэ to fill

(/e/)

eklæd [ik^hlæ:t] first, in the beginning (Pronunciation of the initial vowel is near to that of Khalkha эхлээд) (Kh. эхлээд; Bu. эхилээд; WM ekileged)

eklэхэ [ik^hlэхэ/juk^hlэхэ] to begin, to start (Pronunciation of the initial vowel is near to that of Khalkha speakers's эхлэх) (Kh. эхлэх; Bu. эхилхэ; WM ekilekü) ☞ **yüklэхэ**

ekner nükür [æk^hner nuk^hur/ek^hner nuk^hur] wife and husband, spouse ☞ **ækner nükür**

eküün [ik^hu:ŋ] puckery (taste), astringent (Pronunciation of the initial vowel is near to that of Khalkha эхүүн) (Kh. эхүүн; Bu. эхүүн¹); WM ekegün)

emčiläk [emtɕ^hiläk^h/emtiläk^h] to treat, to doctor ☞ **emtiläk** (Kh. эмчлэх)

emtiläk [emtɕ^hiläk^h/emtiläk^h] to treat, to doctor ☞ **emčiläk** (Kh. эмчлэх)

/ə/

əbderk [əbderk] to get broken, to be damaged (Kh. эвдрэх; Bu. əbdərxэ; WM ebderekü)

əbdəkэ to break, to destroy

əbgüürkək to be uncomfortable, not to feel well ☞ **əbgüürхэх**

əbgüürхэх to be uncomfortable, not to feel well ☞ **əbgüürkək**

əbi nəgdəl solidarity, friendly relations (Kh. эв нэгдэл; Bu. əb nəgədəl; WM eb nigedül)

1) эхүүн 'едкий, кислый' in Цыденжапов (1991: 138) seems to be an error for эхүүн.

- əbʃeek** to yawn ⇄ əbʃeex
əbʃeex yawning ⇄ əbʃeek
əbügə dædəs ancestors (Kh. өвөг дээдэс; WM ebüge degedüs)
əbür horn (Kh. эвэр; Bu. эбэр; WM eber)
əbüsəkə to be ill (Kh. өвдөх; Bu. үбдэхэ; WM ebedkü)
əcəg father (Kh. эцэг; Bu. эсэгэ; WM ečige) ⇄ əciɡ əx ba
 küüküdüüd
əcəstə finally
əcəxə to become weary
əciɡ əx ba küüküdüüd parents and children ⇄ əcəg, əkə
əciɡ kübüün father and son
əciɡee nəɾ father's name
ədəe jasag economy (Kh. эдийн засаг)
ədəgək to recover, to get better
ədəgan female shaman (Kh. удган Bu. удаган WM iduγan/iduγan)
 ⇄ udagan
ədiridaxa to lead, to direct (Kh. удирдах; Bu. ударидаха; WM
 uduridqu)
ədirtlaga leadership, guidance (Kh. удирдлага; Bu. ударидалга;
 WM uduridulγ-a)
ədɲara these
ədxə [ətxə] to sweep (It is not identified in Mongolian, Tungus,
 and Russian dictionaries.)
əəkə fat (Kh. өөх; Bu. өөхэ; WM ögekü)
əəməg earring
əərčiləgdükə to be changed, to become different
əərə for oneself ⇄ öörö
əərəm tal open plain
əərüü stammerer
əgəči elder sister
əgəči düü (elder and younger) sisters, elder sister and younger
 sister
əgüdəgə xutaga razor (/əgüdəgə/ in /əgüdəgə xutaga/ is not
 identified in Mongolian, Tungus, and Russian dictionaries.)
əjəgte hostess, landlady

- əjəmšixə** to possess
əjən owner, host
əjən kaan emperor
əjən kaanee katan empress
əkə mother ☞ əciɡ əx ba küüküdүүд
əkənər wife, (a married) woman ☞ əxnər, əkner nükür, ekner nükür
əkənər abka to take a wife
əkner nükür spouse, wife and husband ☞ ekner nükür
əlэгəбči vest ☞ əlyэгəбчи
əlэгəэрəə kəbtəxə to lie on one's face
ələgi liver (Kh. элэг Bu. эльгэ WM elige) ☞ əlig
ələgsəg kind, kindly
ələgüy cradle, wrapping for a new-born child (Kh. өлгий; Bu. үлгы; WM ölügei)
ələnc əmbəə great-grandmother
ələnc übüg great-grandfather
ələsə sand (Kh. элс; Bu. элһэ; WM elesü) ☞ əlüs
ələsərxəg gajar sandy soil
ələsün čikər granulated sugar
əlig liver (Kh. элэг Bu. эльгэ WM elige) ☞ ələgi
əlüs sand (Kh. элс; Bu. элһэ; WM elesü) ☞ ələsə
əlyэгəбчи vest ☞ əлэгəбчи
əlyэгсəg friendly, intimate, amiable (Kh. элэгсэг)
əlyərkiilkə to express, to display (Kh. илэрхийлэх)
əlyərkiilx to express, to display 2,061 (Kh. илэрхийлэх)
əm medicine
əm uuka to take medicine
əmbəə old woman (Kh. эмээ/эмгээ; WM emege)
əmə koni ewe
əmə takee hen
əmə yamaa she-goat
əməəl saddle
əmэг əkə grandmother
əmэгčün female animal
əmэгən old woman (Kh. эмгэн Bu. эмгэн WM emegen)

- әмәкее үнәртәк** to stink, to have an offensive smell (Kh. өмхий үнәртәх)
- әмәрих** to tweak, to rub together (Kh. имрәх)
- әмәрихә** to tweak, to rub together (Kh. имрәх)
- әмүгләә** clay house (It sounds like a Mongolian word but not identified in dictionaries.) ☞ үмүгләә
- әмүгтеә** woman, female
- ән долоо көнөгт** in this week
- ән жүг** this direction
- ән јил** this year
- ән sara** this month
- әнд** here
- әнд тәнд** here and there
- әнә¹** this (adjective)
- әнә²** this one (demonstrative pronoun)
- әнә³** this person (personal pronoun)
- әңгәј** to do this way (Kh. ингәж)
- әңгәр** flap of a Mongol gown, lapel
- әңгү** color (Kh. өнгө; Bu. үнгә; WM öngge) ☞ үңгү
- әһнәхә** to be lined up, to be in a row (Kh. эгнэх)
- әрбәәхее** butterfly (Kh. эрвәәхәй)
- әрчииләхә** to twist (Kh. эрчлэх)
- әрдән шиши** corn
- әрдәнеә чүлуу** gem, jewel
- әрдәни** jewel, gem, precious thing
- әре тәмәә** he-camel ☞ әрә mori, әрә yamaa
- әре yamaa** he-goat ☞ әрә yamaa
- әрә mori** male horse ☞ әри mori
- әрә yamaa** he-goat ☞ әре yamaa
- әрәдүй** future (Kh. ирәдүй; Bu. ерәдүй)
- әрәгчин** male animal
- әрәгтеә** man, male
- әргәлјәхә** to doubt ☞ әргәлјәхә (Kh. әргәлзәх)
- әргәлјәхә** to hesitate ☞ әргәлјәхә (Kh. әргәлзәх)
- әргәлјмәр** doubtful

- ərgi** bank, shore, coast (Kh. эрэг; WM ergi)
ərgixə to turn, to go round, to rotate (Kh. эргэх)
ərgүүлki to turn, to turn round, to turn over ☞ үнгii ny ergүүлкə
ərgүxə to raise
əri mōri male horse ☞ эрə mōri
ərid nəgə cəgt once upon a time (Kh. урьд нэг цагт)
ərigən toyryən around, surrounding ☞ ərigin toyoryən (Kh. эргэн тойрон)
ərigin toyoryən around, surrounding ☞ ərigən toyryən (Kh. эргэн тойрон)
əriikə to search ☞ əryüki (Kh. эрэх)
ərkee kuruu thumb, pollex (Kh. эрхий хуруу)
ərkə rights
ərtə [ərtə] early
ərü jorigtee brave 638
ərüü chin
ərüül akuy hygiene
ərüül mänd health, healthy
ərüüneə üjüür lower end of the chin
əryexa to invite (Kh. урих; Бу. уриха; WM uriqu)
əryüki to search ☞ əriikə (Kh. эрэх)
əsərgüücək to protest ☞ əsərgüücəx
əsərgüücəx to oppose ☞ əsərgüücək
əsəryəgə opposite, contrary (Kh. эсрэг) ☞ šal əsəryüü
əsgēe gutal felt boots (Kh. эсгий гутал)
əsgələŋ amtutee sour (taste) ☞ əsgələŋ amtutuy
əsgələŋ amtutuy sour (taste) ☞ əsgələŋ amtutee
əsgirwaa whistle ☞ isgirəə (Kh. исгэрээ WM iskirege)
ətuur [ətʰə:r] broom (It is not identified in Mongolian, Tungus, and Russian dictionaries)
əxnər wife ☞ əkənər

/g/

- gaalia tatabar** customs duty
gabalee yasa skull, cranium bone
gadaa out, outside
gadaad ulas foreign country
gadagšee outwards
gadn outside
gadn tala the outside, exterior
gaduur out, outside
gajaas xün foreigner (Kh. гадаад хүн; Bu. гадаадын хүн; WM
 γadayadu kümün; Ka. хазадын орн-нутгин күн)
gajar gajar everywhere
gajar küdülült earthquake
gajar tarieelan agriculture ⇔ gajur tarieelan
gajarčın guide
gajaree əjən landlord
gajaree jurga map
gajaree samara peanut
gajaree toso mineral oil
gajur tarieelan agriculture ⇔ gajur tarieelan
gajura place ⇔ gajuru
gajuru earth, land, ground ⇔ gajura
gakay pig
gakayn myəka pork
gal fire
gal togoo kitchen ('fire (and) cauldron')
gal tüymər fire (as a disaster), conflagration
galbir türk shape, build, appearance
galee gərəl fire light, light of a fire
galee nocoox to make a fire (/ee/ in /galee/ is inexplicable.)
galjuu kün crazy person
galjuurka to go crazy, to go mad (Kh. галзуурах; Bu. галзуурха;
 WM γaljaγuraqu)
galt təræg train

- galt tэргнee buудal** train station (Kh. галт тэрэгний буудал)
galuu goose
gamnuxu to spare, to economize, to save on
ganc kuruunee бээльеe mitten
gancaaduxu to feel lonely, to be solitary (Kh. ганцдах)
гаᠩ draught
гаᠩ kayluulxa to melt steel, to make steel
гаᠩ түмэр steel
гаᠩга ravine, gorge
gar buu handgun, pistol
gar күл arms and legs, hands and feet
gar күркэ to touch
garaka to come out, to go out ⇔ garaxa, garuxu
garam ford, river-crossing
garaxa to happen, to take place ⇔ garaka, garuxu
garcu exit (Kh. гарц; Bu. гарца/гарца; WM γаруца)
garee about, over
garee ar tala back of one's hand
garee kulmus finger nail (Kh. хумс; Bu. хюмхан) ⇔ garee kumus
garee kumus finger nail ⇔ garee kulmus
garee үсүг signature
gargaᠭ abaxa to spin
garguxu to take out
garigi day of the week (< Sa. graha) (Kh. гариг; Bu. гарар; WM garay)
garᠭ irəx to appear, to come out ⇔ garᠭ irkü
garᠭ irkü to appear, to come out ⇔ garᠭ irəx
garla origin (Kh. гарал Bu. гарал)
garmagay outstanding, superior, excellent
garu hand (The final /-u/ is inexplicable.) ⇔ garwə
garuxu to come out, to go out ⇔ garaka, garaxa
garwə arm (/wə/ is inexplicable.) ⇔ garu
gaᠰuubtar [kaᠴo:ptar] taste somewhat bitter
gaᠰüün bitter
gatalka to cross (Kh. гатлах; Bu. гаталха; WM γатуqu)

- gay baricas** misfortune, bad luck (Kh. гай барцад; WM γai barčid)
- gegee** (day)light
- gegee ooxo** to dawn
- gədəs ülüskə** to be hungry (Kh. гэдэс өлсөх; Bu. гэдэхээ үлдэхэ',
WM gedesü ölüskü)
- gəəkə** to lose ⇨ ügəəkə
- gəgətee** bright
- gəjəg** pigtail, queue
- gək mət** etc., and so on
- gələŋ** lama
- gəmgüy** innocent
- gəmt xərəgtən** criminal
- gəmtəx** to be damaged, to hurt
- gənət** suddenly
- gər bül** household ⇨ gər bülə
- gər bülə** family ⇨ gər bül
- gəree arda** at the back of the house
- gəree kajuud tarealŋee talbay** field attached to a homesite, kitchen
garden
- gəree kulgan** house mouse
- gəree urda** front of the house
- gərəltəxə** to shine
- gərlə** light (radiance)
- giičin** guest ⇨ biičin
- giiləxə** to drive (cattle) ⇨ ügiiləxə
- giĵigədəxə** to tickle
- gilbar** easy, simple (Kh. хялбар; Bu. хилбар; WM kilbar) (Consultant
might misheard our question, but it may be related to the
Southern Khalkha phenomenon as some other words as /gokirlo/)
- gišgyəxə** to step, to tread
- gobi** Gobi, semi-desert
- gogod** *Allium odorum*, a kind of wild onion
- gokirlo** harm, damage, loss (Kh. хохирол; Bu. хохирол; WM
qokiral) ⇨ kokiril baragduulka
- golee ərgəçig** river bend

- golee ərigi** riverside
golee kündiin salki river valley wind
golee toxoy river bend
golo river
gomdox to complain
gonginon uylaxa to whine
goojixo to drip, to leak
goridoxo to expect, to hope
gorixo stream ⇌ goryəxə
goryəxə stream ⇌ gorixo
goxo trigger
goyo elegant, beautiful, smart
goyoko to decorate, to ornament, to prettify
guay Mr., Mrs. (addressing to the elders)
gučaad thirty odd, thirty or so
guči thirty
guči bacagan great-great-granddaughter
guči xübüün great-great-grandson
gučidugaar thirtieth
gučin minuut thirty minutes
gudus dotara intestine (/gudus/ should be near to /gədəs/.)
gulda vertical
gulsaatee slippery
gundaxa to get exhausted, to get run down
guniglaxa to be sad, to be sorrowful
gurabdugaar sar March
gurba three
gurba gurbaar three each
gurbadugaar third
gurbaljin kəlbiri triangular shape ⇌ gurbaljin kəlibər
gurbaljin kəlibər triangular shape ⇌ gurbaljin kəlbiri
gurban juu three hundreds
gurban jilee daraa the year after next, three years hence
gurban kün three people
gurban myəŋga three thousands

- gurban uɗaa** three times
gurbanee nəgə one third
gurgalday nightingale
gutal shoes
gutal əməsük to wear shoes, to put on shoes
guuras tube, pipe, duct
guya thigh
guyəka to request
guyrənçi beggar
güdəs belly (Should be near to /gədəs/.) (Kh. гэдэс Bu. гэдэхэ)
 ☞ gədəs ülüskə
güjəljəgən strawberry
güləgə puppy
gülümə leather, skin, cloth etc. which protects the horse from the
 stirrup, etc.
günjügi deep
günji princess
gürbəli lizard
gürləxə to marry (Should be near to /gərləxə/)
güü mare
güüneə ayryəg kumis
güüneə süü mare's milk
güürə bridge
güyçəd kiix to complete ☞ güytəj oçoko
güyləs apricot
güytəj oçoko to overtake, to catch up with ☞ güyçəd kiix
güyüj garku to run out (from inside to outside)
güyükə to run (Kh. гүйх; Bu. гүйхэ; WM güyükü)
gyalaltaku to sparkle, to glitter, to gleam

/i/

ibyəlaa kayrlaxa to bestow a favor (/ -aa/ in /ibyəlaa/ should
 be near to /əə/.)

- ičikə** to be ashamed, to be embarrassed
idəbkətēe active
idəə bəər pus, matter
idkə to eat
idraxa to be tired, to be exhausted (Kh. ядрах; Bu. ядараха; WM yadaraqū)
idüülkə to feed
iim bayna It is like this
iiməə like this
iışee to this way
ijii mother, mom (Kh. ижий/эжий; Bu. эжы; WM ejii)
ik bəyə body ⇨ ik biiyə
ik biiyə body ⇨ ik bəyə
ik buu cannon, artillery
ik tərbüm ten billions
ik түлөб mainly, mostly
ikir xüügüd twin child
il jakidal postcard ('open letter')
ilaa fly (Kh. ялаа; Bu. илаахан; WM ilayan)
ilbə magic, trick
ilči dulaan heat, warmth
ild sword, sabre
iləkə to caress, to stroke
iljgən čik a kind of wild plant or its fruit, which resembles a persimmon
iljigə donkey, ass
iltgəl report
ilüü surplus, spare, more (than), better (than)
ilüü muu worse
ilüü sayn better
ilüü ündür higher
ilüür iron, flatiron
ilüürgəx merit, good point, strong point (It looks like a verb)
indüü iron, flatiron (< Chinese 熨斗 [yündöü])
inəgən thin ⇨ niməgən, nimgən, niŋgən

inyeekə to laugh
inyədtee amusing, funny, humorous
inḡə fully grown she-camel
ir blade, edge
irbəs snow-leopard
irḡən toyron around, surroundings (Kh. эргэн тойрон)
irkə to come
irkə jilə next year
irləkə to sharpen, to put an edge on
iruul bottom (Kh. ёроол; Bu. оёор; WM iruʎal/iruʎar)
isḡirəə whistle ☞ əsḡirwaa
išigə kid
itḡəxə¹ to urge, to encourage (Kh. ятгах; Bu. идхаха; WM idqaqu)
itḡəxə² to believe
ix abaga father's elder brother
ix abaga bərigən father's elder brother's wife

/j/

jaabal certainly, compulsory
jaagči kuruu index finger, forefinger
jaaku¹ to show, to point to
jaaku² to teach
jaanee soyoo ivory
jaan elephant
jaaruka to sell
jaas coin (Kh. зоос)
jabə čüləə spare time, free time
jabə üḡüy busy
jabi small boat
jadalxa to undo, to break up
jagalmeə gills of a fish
jagas fish ☞ jagus
jagasaal procession, parade

- jagasčilaxa** fishing, to fish
jagasnee isə fishbone ⇔ yasu
jagasnee jibyər fin
jagatnuxu to itch
jaglamaytee mogoy adder, viper
jagnuxu to scold, to be cross at
jagsnee sərəə harpoon, fish spear
jagus fish ⇔ jagas
jagusčīn fisherman
jaka market ⇔ jaku
jakee letter (mail) ⇔ jakia
jakia letter (mail) ⇔ jakee
jaku market ⇔ jaka
jalbirku to pray
jalguxu to join, to connect
jalgyəxa to swallow ⇔ to gulp down (Kh. залгих)
jaligilaxa to gulp down ⇔ jalgyəxa (Kh. залгилах)
jaljin sly, cunning
jalkuu lazy
jalkuurka to be slack, to be lazy, to be idle
jalkuxu to get tired of, to have had enough of
jaluu young, young man
jalyəxa to swindle, to defraud
jam way, road ⇔ jamu
jamčiluxa to show the way, to go as a guide
jam juura on the way of, in the middle of
jamu way, road ⇔ jam
jaŋ character, nature, attitude
jaraa hedgehog (Kh. зараа)
jarama suslik, ground squirrel
jarca servant
jarca bool slave
jarca əmə maid servant
jardul costs, expense
jargaldaxu to sue, to lay a complaint

- jarlaga** messenger
jasbarluxu to repair, to mend
jasxu to repair
jaxiryuxu to govern, to administer
jaxu edge
jay distance, gap
jayluxu to avoid, to flee, to move away
jee sister's son
jee okin sister's daughter
jæł market ⇔ jööl
jæłdüülki to lend
jæłki to borrow
jæəri gazelle, antelope
jætüü hoe
jægəys reed
jærəgə grade, degree, rank
jərgəgəx to be lined up, to be in a row
jəri jəbsəg weapons
jərigiləə haze ⇔ jörigiləə
jəryəg at the same time ⇔ jəryəgə
jəryəgə at the same time ⇔ jəryəg
jəsə copper
jobki eyelid
jogsool (bus) stop
jogsoxo to stand, to stop, to halt
jokicuulka to arrange
jolyoos victim
JORILOGO purpose, goal (Kh. зорилго; Bu. зорилго; WM jorilγ-a)
 ⇔ dorilogo
joxicoldootee right, proper, suitable, fitting
joxisüğüy not proper, not suitable
jöökə to transport, to carry
jööl market (Kh. зээл WM jəgeli) ⇔ jəł
jööləkən soft
jööri property

- jööritee** rich, having property
jööritee kün rich person
jörigiləə haze ^{ᠵᠢᠷᠢᠭᠢᠯᠢᠭᠡ} jərigiləə
jörüüdlxə to be obstinate, be awkward
jugtaxa to flee, to run away, to escape
jujaan thick
julbuulka to abort
juljaga young animal, new born animal
juljaglaka to produce a young animal
juna summer
juragay aparaat camera
juraxa to picture
jurga picture
jurgaa six
jurgaanee koyor two sixths
jurgudugaar sar June
jurma suslik, ground squirrel
jursil habit (Kh. зуршил)
jutaŋ šül gruel
juu hundred
juun dүнчүүр ten billions
juun myəŋga hundred thousands
juun sayi hundred million
juuxa to bite, to have between the teeth
jüb right, correct, Right!
jüb todoroxoy correct, precise
jübkən only
jübləxə to go towards, to head for
jübšəərkə to approve, to agree
jüdürkə to wear oneself out, to get exhausted
jüg čig direction
jügə towards
jügi bee
jügiin bala honey
jüŋna [tsuŋna] pan (It is not identified in Mongolian, Tungus,

and Russian dictionaries)

jürk heart

jürk sädikäl heart, affections, heart and mind ⇔ **jürk sätgil**

jürk sätgil heart, affections, heart and mind ⇔ **jürk sädikäl**

jütgəxə to struggle, to strive, to exert oneself

jüü needle

jüüdə dream

jüüdälk to dream

jüün left

jüün taldə the left

jüün talu left side (Should be near to /jüün tal/ or /jüün tala/.)

jüün tul east

jüün tuuše to the left, leftwards (Should be near to /jüün tiiše/.)

jüündə utas sübülükə to thread a needle

jüylə kind, sort

jüyr üg (old) saying

/j/

jaraaxayn dəgəə fish hook ⇔ **jıraaxay**

jaraaxayn sərəə harpoon, fish spear ⇔ **jıraaxay**

jaraaxayn uurga fishing rod ⇔ **jıraaxay**

jaraaxayn uurganee utas fish line ⇔ **jıraaxay**

jäbärikə to rust, to be infected with rust (Kh. зəвпəх)

järligə nuğas mallard

jibkə to sink

jäbšuurku to approve, to agree to

jäči bacəgən great-granddaughter

jäči kübüün great-grandson

jida spear

jignuur balance, scale ⇔ **jijnuur**

jigšixə to be disgusted at, to loathe, to hate

jigšüürtee ugly

jigteexən strange, odd, curious

jīgüür wing

jījiluurtee tough (meat) (Kh. зажлууртай; WM jājiluγurtai)

jījilxa to chew (Kh. заглах; WM jājilqu)

jil büre every year

jimis fruit

jimisgән berry

jimislэхэ to fruit

jīᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇ biscuit

jīᅇᅇᅇᅇ¹ [tᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇ] to steam

jīᅇᅇᅇᅇ² [tᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇ] to weigh

jīᅇᅇᅇᅇ balance, scale ⇌ jīᅇᅇᅇᅇ

jīra sixty

jīraaxay fish ⇌ jīraaxayn дэгээ etc.

jīran kült centipede

jīrbügәр moustache (Kh. живэр)

jīrgaa six

jīriin ordinary, simple

jīrmislәltә pregnancy, conception ⇌ jīrümüslәkә

jīrümüslәkә to get pregnant ⇌ jīrmislәltә

jīᅇᅇᅇ example

jīᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇ for example

jorloᅇ toilet

jūuka oven, stove

jüčәә stable

jüjigә play, drama, show

/k/

kaagdaxu to shut, to be shut, to be closed

kaaku to close

kaalugu gate

kaan where

kaaᅇᅇᅇ to where

kaayaa from time to time

- kabar** spring (season)
kabcal (vertical) cliff
kabči crayfish
kabčuulka to duck in, to duck between
kabdara swelling, tumour, contusion
kabdaxa to swell
kabirgan sara crescent moon, new moon ⇄ xabyərgan sara
kabku trap
kabtaga small pouch
kabyərəg rib
kacaree yas zygomatic bone, cheek bone ⇄ kacura
kacura cheek ⇄ kacaree yas
kačın soniŋ strange, odd
kačir garnish or addition to a dish
kadaas nail
kadagaluulka to deposit, to entrust
kadaglaxa to keep, to store, to conserve, to preserve
kadagtay Mrs, Madame, lady
kadam aba father-in-law
kadam axa düü brothers in-law
kadam eji mother-in-law ⇄ kadam ijii
kadam əgəči düü sisters-in-law
kadam ijii mother-in law ⇄ kadam eji
kadamd očək to take a husband
kadasan öbc hay, dried grass ⇄ xadasan öbs
kadaxa to nail
kadgiraxa to shout, to yell (Kh. хашгирax; Bu. хашхарxa; WM
 qaškiraqu)
kadlan hay, hay-field
kaduxu to mow, to reap ⇄ xaduxu, kadasan öbc etc.
kagacaka to leave, to get free of
kagalaagdaxa to split (passive)
kagalaxa to slit, to split (active)
kajayxa to be tilted, to be crooked
kajuura sickle

- kajuxa** to bite ⇔ xajuxa
kajuud side
kalbaga spoon
kaldaxa to infect
kalim whale
kalimag kün a Kalmuck ⇔ kalimyäg kün
kalimyäg kün a Kalmuck ⇔ kalimag kün
kalin nisэхү to soar and turn round and round ⇔ kalin nixə, niskə
kalin nixə to soar and turn round and round ⇔ kalin nisэхү, niskə
kalisluku to peel ⇔ xalisulku
kaljan tologoy baldhead ⇔ tolgoy, tolgayn əbčin, etc.
kalka cow shed, cattle pen
kalkaluxu to cover, to shield, to screen
kaltirəgaatee slippery (Kh. халитьиргаатай)
kaluu hot (taste)
kaluun temperature, heat, hot and sultry
kaluun arašan hot spa
kaluun kanj heatable sleeping platform in a room, under floor heating
kaluun us hot water
kalyaar *Allium victorialis*, a kind of wild garlic
kalyuu otter
kalyuun bugu red deer, *Cervus elaphus*
kamaagüy doesn't matter, irrelevant, nothing to do with
kamaarka to depend on ⇔ xamaarka
kamaatan relatives
kamagay muu the worst
kamagay sayn the best
kamagay ündür the highest
kamaree nük nostrils ⇔ xamaree nük, kamaru, etc.
kamaru nose ⇔ kamaree nük, etc.
kamgaalka to defend, to protect
kamkarxa to get broken, to be damaged (Kh. хамхрах)
kamnigan kün a Khamnigan
камраан company (< Ru. компа'ния) (Kh. компани)

- kamta** together
kamtaran aǰillax to cooperate, to work together
kamuu mange, scabies
kamuut yoke (for a horse and its cart) (< Ru. хому'т) ⇨ komuut
kan kübüün prince
kana section of a Mongolian tent-wall, wall
kancuy sleeves
kandaka to treat
kandalaga attitude, tendency
kandgay elk
kanyeed cough, cough, cold
kanyeed kürkə to catch cold
kanyeelgaxa to cough
kaᅇalıtay sufficient, satisfactory
kar kükü indigo, dark deep blue ⇨ xar kükü, kara kəree, karu, etc.
kara kəree raven
kara xusa black birch
karaačay swallow
karaakan (not) yet ⇨ karaakun
karaakun (not) yet ⇨ karaakan
karaaxa to curse, to swear
karacug hawk (Kh. харцара)
karacuga hawk (Kh. харцага)
karaglajuxu to supervise, to look after ⇨ xaraglajaxa
kamasultay regrettable, deplorable
karamči stingy, misery ⇨ xaramči
karamsuxa to be sorry, to have regrets
karandaaš pencil (< Ru. карандаш) (Kh. харандаа; Вн. карандаш)
karաᅇgu gong
karաᅇkuy dark
karaxu to look, to see
kardaxa to be suspicious
karee būrii dusk
karee būrii bolko to grow dark ⇨ xarii būrii bolxo
kargis cruel, brutal, fierce

- karguy** street
karicaa relations, relationship
karicuulka to compare
karigixan shallow (water) ⇔ xarigixan
karilcaa relations, relationship
kariu answer, response, reply
kariucaxa to take responsibility
kariučlaga responsibility
kariuucaĵ abka to take responsibility for
kariuulka¹ to answer
kariuulka² to repay, to requite ⇔ xariuulka
karmaa pocket (< Ru. карма́н)
karu black ⇔ xar kükü, kara kəree, karu, etc.
karuu frost (Kh. хяруу; Bu. хюруу; WM kiraγu)
karuul plane (carpenter's tool)
karuul manaa guard, sentry
karuulka to show (the existence)
karyaalagdaxa to be subordinate to, to be within the preview of,
to come under the jurisdiction of ⇔ xaryaalagdaxa
kasag Kazakh ⇔ xasag
kasag kün a Kazakh
kaši čuluu jade ⇔ xaši šeluu
kašilag fence ⇔ xašilag
kataaxa to dry up
katan her majesty, empress, queen
katgamal embroidery
katguxu to stab, to pierce, to stick in, to sting, to insert
katuu hard
katuu čingə strict, severe, harsh
katuxu to dry up ⇔ xatuxu
kayaal əgəči düü female second cousins
kayaga address
kayaxu to throw, to drop
kayč scissors
kayčlaxa to cut with scissors

- kayku** to search
kaylaka to melt
kaymar india-rubber, rubber
kayr love
kayraga čiluu gravel, grit
kayraga čuluu gravel, grit
kayras scale (fish)
kayrčag box, chest
kayrka to roast, to fry
kayrlaka to love
kayruulka tabaga frying-pan
kebyən korkoy moth (Kh. хивэн эрвээхэй; WM kibyeng erbekei)
kəbdəkə to lie down
kəbtəj bayxa to lie, to lie down
kəcüü difficult
kəčineen how much
kəddügəər which one in a series?
kədən how many
kədən nasutee how old
kədiin already (Kh. хэдийнэ)
kədyee cag what time
kəəlbiix to lean, to deviate, to tilt, to decline
kəəly abka to be impregnated, to conceive
kəər tal steppe, grassland
kəərkan cute, pretty ⇨ ükөөrikən
kəərki poor, pitiable
kəərkiilkə to be sorry for, to feel for
kəərülүүсэн süü simmered milk (Kh. хөөрүүлсэн сүү)
kəjəə when
kəlbir shape, form (Kh. хэлбэр; Bu. хэлбэри; WM kelberi) ⇨ kəlbiri
kəlbiri shape, form (Kh. хэлбэр; Bu. хэлбэри; WM kelberi) ⇨ kəlbir
kəldge jagas crucian carp
kələ¹ tongue
kələ² language
kələgüy kün dumb person

kələkə to say, to speak

kələlcəər negotiation ⇐ xələlcəər

kələlcəx to discuss, to converse ⇐ xələlcəx

kəlmərčiləx to interpret, to act as an interpreter ⇐ kərməlciləx
(Kh. ХЭЛМЭРЧЛЭХ)

kəmjixə to measure

kəmkee lower lip (Kh. хөмхий; WM kömükei)

kən who

kən nəg kün someone, somebody

kən nəg ny someone, one of them

kənee whose

kərčikə to cut, to slice (thin) ⇐ kərčixə

kərčixə to cut, to slice (thin) ⇐ kərčikə

kərag business, matter

kəragtee to be needed, necessary

kəram¹ castle

kəram² squirrel

kərgij kün a Kirgiz

kərgləkə to use

kərməlciləx to interpret, to act as an interpreter ⇐ kəlmərčiləx (Kh.
ХЭЛМЭРЧЛЭХ)

kərüül təmcəl quarrel, dispute

kəsəg¹ part

kəsəg² lump

kəwəər as before, unchanged

kibyəkə to ruminate

kičeeŋgüylən kündülkə to respect, to treat with respect

kiikə¹ to do, to make

kiikə² to put thing in, to dish up, to fill

kiilgləkə to let someone to do something (Kh. хийлгэх Bu. WM
kilgekü)

kil kəjagaar border, frontier, boundary

kimda cheap (Kh. хямд Bu. хямда WM kimda) ⇐ kyamdə

kimdaxan ünə cheap price

kinoo movie (< Ru. кино')

- kir** dirt
kir burtag dirt
kirgaka to shear (a sheep)
kiristoosee süm church
kleem bread (Бу. ХИЛЭЭМЭ) ⇔ klyeem
klyeem bread (Бу. ХИЛЭЭМЭ) ⇔ kleem
kobor rare, rarely
kocoroko to be left behind
kodood stomach
kojimdoko to be late
kokiril baragduulka to compensate for ⇔ gokirlo
kolboxo to connect, to join, to unite
kolgoxo to rub, to chafe
kolildoxo to mingle with, to be mixed with
kolo far
koltos bark of a tree
kolyəxo to mix ⇔ xolyəxo
komool horse dung
komuut yoke (for a horse and its cart) (< Ru. хому'т) (Kh. буулга)
 ⇔ kamuut
koni sheep
konin togoo large cauldron
koninee noos wool
koninee süü sheep milk
konjuu gain, profit ⇔ xonjuu
konko bell
konog a day and a night, 24 hours
kool meal ⇔ xool etc.
kool künəs food, provision, eatables
kooloy throat
koorond between
kooslko to empty out ⇔ xooslxo
kooson empty
kor poison
korgol droppings of camel, sheep, or goat

- kori** twenty
koriaad twenty odd, twenty or so
koridugaar twentieth ^{ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠳᠤᠭᠠᠭ} xoridugaar
korin nэгə twenty one
korkay worm, insect
korogodoxo to be reduced, to be cut down
korom minute, moment, second, in a moment
koso pair
kosroxo to become empty
koto koree pen, fold
koyd north
koyn north
koyor two
koyor juu two hundreds ^{ᠬᠣᠶᠣᠷᠵᠤᠭᠤ} xoyor juu
koyor koyoroor two each
koyor kün two people ^{ᠬᠣᠶᠣᠷᠬᠦᠨ} xoyor kün
koyor myəŋga two thousands
koyor tala two sides
koyordugaar second
koyortaa two times, twice
koyšiluulka to postpone
koyt back
koyt əcəg step father
koyt əkə step mother
koyuulaa two of us together ^{ᠬᠣᠶᠤᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭ} xoyuulaa
köö tortog soot
köökə to pursue, to chase away
köös foam, scum
kubaaᠯ ügük to distribute, to divide up, to share out
kubaax to divide
kubcas clothes
kubi share, portion, allotment
kubi jayaa fate, fortune
kubiarilaxa to distribute, to divide up, to share out
kubisgal revolution

- kubtasnee jaxa** collar
kubyee oncolog individual character
kuca ram
kučixa to cover, to cover up ⇔ xučixa
kučütee strong ⇔ xüčütee
kudla false
kugacaa period, time, term ⇔ xugacaa
kugas half (Kh. xarac; Bu. хахад; WM qayas)
kugaslaka to halve (Kh. хагаслах; Bu. хахадлах; WM qayaslaqu)
kulanc əmbəə great-great-grandmother
kulanc kügšee great-great-grandfather ⇔ xulanc xügšee
kulčigar timid, fearful
kulgana mouse, rat
kulgayčín thief ⇔ kulugaač, kulugayč
kulugaač pilferer, petty thief ⇔ kulgayčín, kulugayč
kulugayč pilferer, petty thief ⇔ kulgayčín, kulugaač
kulus mod bamboo
kuluu pumpkin
kuluuka to steal
kumaka malaria
kumas nail (finger, toe)
kun swan
kundaga goblet, glass, cup
kur šibuu black grouse
kuraga lamb
kuralaa neek to open the conference, meeting
kurca sharp, keen
kurda speed
kurdan fast, quickly
kurgirax to snore
kuruu finger
kus modnee mæg birch tree mushroom
kusaka to shave
kuš mod cedar
kutag well (for water)

kutga knife

kuučin old, worn

kuugalaxa to break, to fracture (transitive)

kuuja side whiskers, sideburns

kuulye law

kuuray dry ☞ xuuray, kuuree

kuuree¹ dry ☞ xuuree, kuuray

kuuree² rasp

kuuree axa elder sister's husband. Original meaning of /kuuree/ is 'dry' as /kuuray/ or /xuuray/. Khalkha хуурай ('dry') is used as an attribute to denote someone who is regarded as one's own family member but who is not related in blood or marriage very similarly to the Chinese word 干[gān] 'dry'. An Alar Buriat consultant of 1997 fieldwork study, Mrs. Eleonora Vladimirovna Tumurova (41 years old) used the word xuuree axa for 'husband'.

☞ xuuree ax

kuuree gajar land

kuuree uliral dry season

kuurka to roast

kuursan tutarga parched rice

kuurtaxa to be deceived

kuyu salki whirlwind

kübči bowstring

kübüd moss

kübün cotton

kübün alčuur towel

kübün daabuu cotton

kübün polaas towel (< Ру. поло'тенце?)

kübüx to float

küči power ☞ xüči

küčin jüil force, factor

küčünee kəmjəə degree of strength, intensity

küdələməryəkə to labour, to work, to toil

küdər musk deer

küdüləx to move, to shake, to sway, to rock, to leave

küdülgəxə to stir, to excite, to (make something) move

küdülmərčīn laborer, worker

küdülxə to move

kügčə mold

kügjiltē cheerful, merry, lively

kügjim 1. music 2. musical instrument

kügjix to develop, to flourish

kügšin old, aged

kügšin kün old person ⇨ xügšin kün

küjüü neck

küjüünee jüült necklace

kükə¹ blue

kükə² breast

kükəə cuckoo

kükükə to suck milk

kül foot, leg

kül nücgən barefoot

küldəkə to freeze

külee əryəən bulčīn calf of the leg

külee kumas toe nail

külee kuruu toe

külee šagay ankle

küliyəkə to wait

küliyən abka to receive, to accept

külüs¹ pay, wages, salary

külüs² sweat

külüs garka to sweat

külyee ul sole of the foot

küməəl Mongol onion, *Allium mongolicum*

kümüsgə eyebrow

kümüüs people

kün person, people, human being

künd heavy

kündee jin weight

kündətgəxə to respect, to treat with respect

- kündülən** horizontal
kündülənee orolcoo interference, meddling
künəsə food, provision
künkiix concave, dent, hollowed
künsnee nogoo vegetables
küngün light (in weight)
küngünd üjəx to despise
kür korkayn üür cocoon
kürbүүлкə to translate, to interpret
küree range, scope, extent
küreelкə to surround, to make a circle, to envelop, to surround,
to besiege
kürə korkoy silkworm
kürəə saw (tool)
kürgəxə to freeze
kürigen küü son-in-law
kürigin bridegroom
kürilə bronze
kürкə¹ to arrive, to reach
kürкə² to get cold, to cool down
kürкree waterfall
kürmə (short outer) jacket
kürši neighbor
kürülcətee sufficient
kürүң brown
kүskə to want, to wish
kүšikäləkə to slice, to cut thin
kütүлкə to lead, to drive
kүü boy, son
kүüg child
kүükäd child
kүükäldee doll
kүükән кəl uvula
kүys navel
kүytән chilly, cold

kwaanlye calendar (< Ch. 還曆[huánlì])
kyamda cheap (Kh. хямд; Bu. хямда; WM kimda) ⇔ kimda
kyeŋgan kutaga kitchen knife

/l/

laa candle (< Ch. 蠟[là])
laaja can, tin, bin (< Ch. 擲子[lázǐ])
lag šabar mud, mire
limbə flute (< Ti. gling-bu)
lonko bottle
luu dragon (< Ch. 龍[lóng])
luusa mule (< Ch. (< Ancient Chinese 騾子. Its modern standard pronunciation is [luózi]. This word seems to have been borrowed indirectly through Middle Mongolian or other sources)

(/ʎ/)

ʎagba garigi Wednesday (< Ti. lhag-pa + Sa. graha)

/m/

maajixu to scratch, to scratch at
-maar bayna to feel like doing, to want
magasgüy perhaps, possibly, maybe (Kh. магадгүй; Bu. магадгүй; WM mayadügei)
magnee forehead
magtdoxo to praise
majaalee (Gobi) bear (*Ursus pruinusus*) (Kh. мазаалай)
maka meat, flesh
mala domestic animal
malagay hat

- malagay əməsükə** to wear a hat, to put on a hat
malči herdsman
malee təjeel forage, fodder
manaaci guard, sentry, watch
manaŋ mist, fog
manaŋ nüügüldəkə to be foggy, to be mist
manaŋ tataka to be foggy, to be mist
manay our
manay tala our side
manji Manchu
manu agate (< Ancient Ch. 瑪瑙, maybe borrowed to Middle Mongolian through other source such as Old Uighur)
manuul *manul*, wild cat
manuus we (hearer inclusive)
margaaši tomorrow
martaxa to forget
maši very
maši бага few, very few, very small
maši bičeeхэн very small
maši olon a lot, very many
maši tomo very big
mašiin car (< Ru. маши'на) (Kh. машин)
mašiinee тээхник [maçi:ne: tʰə:xnik] machine, vehicle (< Ru. маши'на, техни'ка) (Kh. машин техник)
maykan tent
maylxa to bleat
məдəə news
məдəкəгү not to know, do not know
məдəркə to feel
məдəхə to know
məдрəл nerve, nerves
məклəхə to cheat, to deceive ⇌ məхлəхə
məлən colkoob cash ⇌ бəлən colkoob
məндчилəх to greet
məng tolbo mole, birthmark, spot

- mərəč idək** to gnaw, to nibble
mərəkə to gnaw, to nibble
mərgə tülüg fortune telling, divination
mərgəjil profession, job
məxləxə to swindle, to defraud ^{ᠮᠡᠬᠯᠡᠬᠡ} məkləxə
miitərə metre (< Ru. метр) (Kh. метр)
minjə beaver
minyee my
miṅmara garigi [miṅmără kariyi] Tuesday (< Ti. mig-dmar +
 Sa.) (Kh. мягмар гариг; WM miṅmar)
mišuuk to smile (Kh. мишээх; WM misiyekü/misigekü)
mitraal material (Kh. материал; Bu. материал; WM materiyal)
modo tree, wood
modočin woodcutter
modon sam wooden comb
modonee iš trunk of a tree
modonee müčir branch of a tree
modonee nüürs charcoal
mokoo dull, blunt
moṅgol Mongol
moṅgol gər Mongolian felt tent
moṅgol kün a Mongol
mori horse
mori unaad yabaku to go on horseback
morinee tərэг horse-cart
möög mushroom (Kh. мөөг; Bu. мөөгэ; WM mögü/mögüü)
möörökə to moo, to low (for cattle)
mujaaṅ carpenter
mukur nük pit
mukur ologoy appendix
mukuu female genitalia (in children's speech)
muluguu stupid
muna mallet
muṅkag fool, stupid
murii juraas curved line, curve (Kh. муруй зураас WM murui)

‘curved’)

murtaṛlaxa to sign

muu bad, evil

muura cat

müdүүлэк to report, to inform (Kh. мэдээлэх)

mülgär smooth (Kh. мөлгөр)

müljixə to exploit (Kh. мөлжих)

mülkə vine (Kh. мөлхөө)

mülkəkə to crawl, to creep (Kh. мөлхөх)

mündur hail (Kh. мөндөр)

mүнə the present

mүнə oroy this evening

mүнə sün tonight ⇄ mүнə šün

mүнə šün tonight ⇄ mүнə sün

mүнə үгүлэ this morning

mүnuudur today

mүnuunuus from now on

mүңгə¹ silver

mүңгə² *mүngü* (monetary unit, one hundredth part of a *tүgrүg*)

mүңgү money

mүңgүnee күü interest (money) ⇄ mүңgүnee xүү

mүңgүnee xүү interest (money) ⇄ mүңgүnee күü

mүrdəkə to follow, to go after, to pursue, to track

mүrə shoulder

mүrə kabčixa to shrug the shoulders

mүrgүlädəkə to collide, to butt each other

mүriitee togloom gambling

mүrnee polaas shawl

mүrүнə big river

mүsə ice

mүšgik to pursue, to chase, to trace, to track

myaka tataxa to mince meat

myaṅgu [mjaṅgø] thousand (Kh. мянга Вн. мянга WM mingγ-a)

myəka meat

/n/

naadam toy

naadum game, play

naaduxa to play

naasaj käläkə to joke

naasxa to play

naaxu to stick

nabči leaf

nagac bərigin wife of mother's brother

nagac əсəг mother's father ☞ naguc əсгə

nagac əkə mother's mother

nagac xürgən axa husband of mother's sister

nagsa mother's brother (Bu. нарца 'mother's father')

nagsaxay mother's sister (Bu. нарца абрай 'mother's sister';
нарасхай/нарца ахай 'mother's brother')

naguc əсгə maternal grandfather ☞ nagac əсəг

naguurka to lead, to be accompanied by, to cause to follow (May
be a simple pronunciation error of daguulka.) ☞ daguullka

nakyaа bud

naluxu to lean against

nambalag dignified, grave

namakan nyürugutee short (stature) (Kh. намхан нуруутай Bu.
нюргатай WM namqan niruγutai)

namakun low

namaxan nyürugutee short (stature)

namgarkag gajar swamp, marsh, bog

namtura biography, life-story

namuru autumn (Kh. намар; Bu. намар; WM namur)

nančildaxa to fight, to brawl

nandignuku to treasure, to revere, to treat with reverence, to
cherish

nar oroxo to set (sun)

nar urgaxa to rise (sun)

nara jirgaxa sunset

- nara mandaxa** sunrise
nara urgaxa sunrise
narand əək to bask in the sun
nariin thin, fine
nariin gədəs small intestine
nariyeekan thin, fine, narrow (Kh. нарийнхан)
nariyeekan šudtee samu fine-toothed comb (Kh. нарийнхан шүдтэй сам)
naru sun
narus pine tree
nasand kürsən kün adult
nasu age
naya eighty
найма eight
наймаа barter, trade
наймаачин merchant
наймаалј crab
наймаалј abka to buy
наймдугаар sar August
nayr feast, banquet ⇨ **найрүэ** (Kh. найр Бу. найр WM **nayir**)
найрүэ feast, banquet ⇨ **nayr** (Kh. найр Бу. найр WM **nayir**)
naytaak to sneeze ⇨ **naytooxo** (Kh. найтаах)
naytooxo sneeze ⇨ **naytaak** (Kh. найтаах)
nduu [ndwə:/tə:] song (It maybe a simple error of /duu/.)
neekə to open
nəbtərxə to penetrate, to pass, to cross
nəbtləx to penetrate
nəbtrүүлэг broadcast
нэгə one
нэгə cagə one hour
нэгə kün one person
нэгə minuut one minute
нэгə нэгдээр one each
нэгə šün one night
нэгə tal one side

nəgə uɗaa one time, once
nəgəɗügəər first ☞ nəgəsügəər sar
nəgəsügəər sar January ☞ nəgəɗügəər
nəgʝix to search for
nəkəx to weave, to knit
nəli yagaan violet
nəməgɗəxə to increase, to grow
nəməkə to add
nəməxə to add
nər tərtee honorable
nərə name
nərgüy kuruu ring finger
nigta dense ☞ nyegta
niigəm society
niigəmee garal social status
niik to blow the nose
niisləl city
niisləl kot capital city
niitə all, total, public, general, gross
niləəd considerably, remarkably
niməgən thin ☞ ☞ inəgən, niməgən, niŋgən
niməgən thin ☞ inəgən, niməgən, niŋgən
niŋgən thin ☞ inəgən, niməgən, niməgən
niŋgyən künʝil blanket, bed clothes
nisə snivel (Kh. нус; Bu. нюһа; WM nisu) ☞ nyüsə
niskə to fly
niskə ongoc airplane
nodniŋ last year ☞ nodnyoŋ
nodnyoŋ last year ☞ nodniŋ
nogoon green (color)
nogoon məlkee green frog
nogoy snake (Simple pronunciation error of mogoy)
nogt halter
nokoy dog
nokoy böös flea

- nomo** book
noyiloxo to dominate, to rule
noyin Mr., gentleman ☞ noyon
noyin nuruu ridge-pole
noyiton wet, damp
noyon Mr., gentleman ☞ noyin
noyr kürkü to feel sleepy ☞ noyr xürkü
noyr xürkü to feel sleepy ☞ noyr kürkü
noyro sleep ☞ noyryo
noyryo sleep ☞ noyro
nökcöl condition
nööcləx to lay in, to reserve ☞ nööcülək
nööcülək to reserve ☞ nööcləx
nudarga fist
nugas¹ duck
nugas² spinal cord
nugasa spinal cord
nuglaxa to fold
nulimas tear (Kh. нулимс/нулмис; Bu. нёлбоһон; WM nilbusu)
nulmak to spit (Kh. нулимах)
num xarbaka archery ☞ num xarboxa
num xarboxa archery ☞ num xarbaka
numa bow
numü sumü karboxa shoot an arrow
nuntaga powder
nuntagalx to pulverize, to reduce to powder ☞ nuntaglaxa
nuntaglaxa to pulverize, to reduce to powder ☞ nuntagalx
nuraga waist, small of the back (Kh. нуруу; Bu. нурга; WM niruγu)
nuraxa to collapse
nurma ash
nurtee [nɔrt^hɛ:] famous, well-known (Should be near to /nərtee/)
nuruu back (spine)
nuryə personal name (Should be near to /nər/. /-yə/ is not explainable.)
nuuca secret

- nuucaar nəbtərkə** to infiltrate
nuugdaka to be hidden, to hide
nuuka to hide, to conceal
nuur lake ⇔ nuura
nuura lake ⇔ nuur
nücgən naked, bare
nüd gyelbaxa dazzled (Kh. нүд гялбах; WM gilbaqu)
nüdə eye
nüdəx to pound
nüdnée šil eyeglasses
nüdnée šil jüük to wear glasses, to put on glasses
nüdünee cəcəgee eyeball
nüggəə tala opposite side
nüggəədəree margaaši three days hence, two days after tomorrow
nüggəəsər day after tomorrow
nükən joori lair, cellar
nükər¹ husband
nükər² comrade
nükük to patch, to mend
nüləə influence
nümürkə to drape over the shoulders
nürə personal name ⇔ nuryə (Should be near to /nər/.)
nürəə back (spine) ⇔ nuruu
nüükə to move, to shift pastures, to migrate
nüülgəkə to move, to shift
nüür ugaakə sabə washbasin
nüürə face
nüürəsə coal
nyareea küük infant (Kh. нярай хүүхэд)
nyeedəkə to open (up)/to be opened
nyegta dense ⇔ nigta
nyeləxa to spread on, to apply
nyima garigi Sunday (< Ti. nyi-ma + Sa. graha)
nyüsə snivel (Kh. нус; Bu. нюха; WM nisu) ⇔ nisə

/o/

- oboseer** officer (< Ru. офице́р) (Kh. офицер [afitse:r]; Bu. офицер; WM opičer) ☞ abaseer
- obog** family name, father's name
- ooolko** [ɔwɔ:lkʰɔ] to hear up, to pile up
- oooriko** to pile up, to gather together
- obooyoos** oat
- očiko** to go ☞ očoko
- očoko** to go ☞ očiko
- odo** star
- odoo** present
- odoo boltol** up to now
- odoxo** to lie in wait
- ogcom** steep, abrupt, sharp
- ogtoloxo**¹ to cut, to cut off, to cut down
- ogtoloxo**² to go across, to traverse
- okin** girl, daughter, maiden, maid
- olj neekə** to find
- olomo** saddle-girth, cinch
- olon** many
- olon kün** crowd, many people
- olonee guuglaan** shouting, shout, outcry
- olonee kašigiraan** shouting, shout, outcry
- oloso**¹ hemp (Kh. олс WM olosο)
- oloso**² rope, cord, strip (Kh. олс Bu. WM olosο)
- oloxo** to get, to gain, to obtain
- on** year
- oncogoy** special
- ondoo** different
- ongoylgoxo** to open
- ongoyxo** to open (up)/to be opened
- oniloko** to aim
- onisga** riddle
- onoko** to hit (the mark), to aim

- ooli** adze
orco entrance
orčim around, about
oriloxo to cry, to howl, to yell, to scream, to crow
orilyočogoor approximately (Kh. ойролцоогоор) ⇔ oyrilcogoor
orluulka to replace
oro bed
oro dərnee kərəgsəl bed clothes
oroko to come in, to go in
orolcoxo to participate
oroldoxo to attempt
oron gər home
oron nutag locality
oronee daabuu bed sheet
oroox to twine round, to entwine, to wrap, to bind up
oros Russia (Kh. орос; Bu. ород; WM oros)
orosee cagaan kaan Russian *tsar*
orosee solongos kün a Korean Russian
orošin suugči inhabitant
oroy¹ summit
oroy² late
oroy³ evening
oroy bolgon every evening
oroyn kool supper, dinner
oroyn mänd xüргәyi Good evening!
oršүүлга funeral
osgon bacagan youngest daughter
osgon kübüün youngest son
oy forest
oy kübči forest
oyidolo sewing ⇔ oyodolo
oylogoko to understand
oyodolo sewing ⇔ oyidolo
oyoko to sew
oyrd recently

oyri near ⇨ ойруу
oyrilcogoor approximately ⇨ orilyočogoor
oyro dotono intimate, familiar
oyro xabi nearby
oyrtaka to near
oyryuu near ⇨ ойри

(/ö/)

öbüg әсәг grandfather
öbüg әсәгә grandfather
öör different, different one
ööröö for oneself ⇨ әәрәә

/p/

palimood machine gun (< Ru. пулемёт)
palitoo overcoat (< Ru. пальто') ⇨ paltoo
paltoo overcoat (< Ru. пальто') ⇨ palitoo
pateer photo (< Ru. фотография?) (Kh. пагиар)
peesij stove (< Ru. печ?) (Kh. пийшин)
pisaa bedbug (Kh. бязаа; Bu. бисаа; WM bisa)
pürbә garigi Thursday (< Ti. phur-bu + Sa. graha)

/s/

saaku to milk
saalyee ünyee milking cow
saarul grey
sab suulga utensils, vessels, pots and pans
sabaa rod
saban soap

- sabcixu** to chop (Kh. цавчих; Bu. сабшаха; WM čabčiqu)
- sabka** chopstick
- sagagu** buckwheat
- sagul** overall designation for beard, mustache, whiskers (Kh. сахал; Bu. хахал; WM saqal) ⇔ saxalee tongorog
- sala** raft
- saliki** wind
- salkilaka** to blow (wind)
- salkin cəcəg əbüčün** German measles, rubella
- saltoo** crutch, perineum (Kh. салтаа; Bu. халтаа; WM saltaγ-a)
- saluku** to divorce, to depart, to leave, to part
- samarga [čamarga/samarga]** storm, snowstorm, blizzard (Kh. шамарга; Bu. шамарга; WM simarγ-a) ⇔ šamarga
- samca** shirt ⇔ camca
- samnuur [samnoor]** rake, scarifier
- samnuxu** to comb
- samu** comb (Kh. сам; Bu. ham; WM sam)
- samu korkoy** shrimp ⇔ sam хорхой
- samu xorxoy** shrimp ⇔ sam korkoy
- samuuree** Japan (< Ja. さむらい[samurai])
- sanaa joboxo** to worry, to be worried, to be anxious
- sanaačlaga** initiative
- sanaand oroxo** to occur to, to come to mind, to recall
- sanal** opinion
- sanaxu** to think, to regard as ⇔ sanuku
- sandul** chair (< Ar. şandali) (Kh. сандал; Bu. сандали; WM sandali)
- sanuku** to remember ⇔ sanaxu
- sanuu** thought, idea, opinion (Kh. санаа; Bu. ханаа; WM sanaγ-a)
- saŋgin** green onion (Kh. сонгино; Bu. хонгино; WM songgin-a)
- sar büri** every month
- sar жүгii** wasp (Kh. шар зөгий; Bu. шара зүгы; WM sir-a jögei)
- sara** moon
- saraam** lily, Lilium (It may be a simple pronunciation error of /saraana/.) ⇔ saraana

- saraana** lily, Liliium ^{ᠰᠢᠷᠠᠨᠠ} saraam
sarabci cow shed, cattle pen
sarabčutee malagay cap ^{ᠰᠢᠷᠠᠪᠴᠢᠲᠡᠢ} sarabdyüte malagay
sarabdyüte malagay cap ^{ᠰᠢᠷᠠᠪᠴᠢᠲᠡᠢ} sarabčutee malagay
saree süül last ten days of a month
sareen dund second ten days of a month
sareen ek first ten days of a month
sarisan bagbaakay bat
sarmagčïn monkey
sarsan myəka roast meat ^{ᠰᠢᠷᠰᠠᠨ} šarsan myəka
saru month
saxalee tongorog razor, shaver ^{ᠰᠠᠬᠠᠯᠡ} sagul
saxixu to defend, to protect
sayd minister
sayi million
saykan just (now), recently, just before
sayn good
sayn baynat gü How are you! Good day!
sayn biš not good
sayxan beauty, pretty, beautiful
sayxan noyrsobot gü Good morning! (Did you sleep nicely?)
seeri nuraga vertebrae, backbone
seeryügü šüdtee samu coarse comb
səbxə to winnow (Kh. сЭВЭХ)
sədkil xanaxu to be satisfied
səəbüil Seoul (the capital of Korea) (< Ko. 서울[səwul])
səgsuur sieve (Kh. шигшүүр; WM sigsigür)
səjigtee suspicious
səkuund second (1/60 minute)
səlüür oar
səlüürdəkə to oar, to row
səreex to wake up, to awaken (transitive)
sərixı to wake up (intransitive)
sərüün cool
sətgil mind, thought

- sətgüül** magazine, journal
- siilkə** to carve, to cut, to engrave (Kh. сийлэх; Bu. ииилэхэ; WM seyilekü)
- silə** soup
- simə** secretly, stealthily
- sogdxo** to get drunk
- sogoo** toe
- sokor kün** blind person
- sokor namin** mule-rat, mole, Myospalax myospalax (Kh. сохор номин)
- solaŋga** rainbow (Kh. солонго; Bu. холонго; WM solangγ-a/solongγ-a)
- solgoxo** to take off, to separate (Kh. салгах)
- soljir əbərtee үкүр¹** a cattle which has only one horn (Kh. солжир эвэртэй үхэр)
- soljir əbərtee үкүр²** a cattle which has crooked horn (Kh. хазгай эвэртэй үхэр)
- soloŋga** weasel (Kh. солонго; Bu. холонго; WM solongγ-a)
- solongos** Korea (Kh. Солонгос; WM solongγos)
- solyeerxu** to go crazy, to go mad
- solyəkə** to change
- sona** dragonfly
- sonin** newspaper
- sonirkoltee** interesting
- sonsoxo** to listen, to hear
- songuuli** election
- songxo** to elect, to select, to choose
- soolxo** to pierce ⇔ čoolxo
- soribi** scar ⇔ soribyə
- soribyə** scar ⇔ soribi
- sormuus** eyelashes
- soxoy** lime
- soyil** culture ⇔ soyol
- soyjə** [sø:ɬə] brush (< Chinese 刷子[shuāzi])
- soyol** culture ⇔ soyil

- soyoo** bud, sprout, shoot
- söömə** *sööm*, distance between the tips of the outstretched index finger and the thumb
- subaga** channel, canal, ditch
- sudas** blood vessel
- sudasnee čakilt** pulse ^{ᠡᠰᠦ} sudasnee čokilt
- sudasnee čokilt** pulse ^{ᠡᠰᠦ} sudasnee čakilt
- sudlaxa** to study
- suga** armpit
- sul tal** weak point, shortcoming, defect, demerit ^{ᠡᠰᠦ} usul tal
- sula** loosen
- suluun šugam** straight line
- suma**¹ arrow
- suma**² bullet
- suma**³ an administrative unit over *bags* and under an *aimag*
- suṅgaxa** to stretch out, to extend
- suragaka** to tame, to train, to break (a horse)
- suraka** to learn
- surgači** pupil
- surguuli** school
- surimis** garlic ^{ᠡᠰᠦ} surimyəs
- surimyəs** garlic ^{ᠡᠰᠦ} surimis
- surka** to learn
- surtalčilaxu** to publicize
- surun** leather strap, leather rope
- suruulka** to relax, to loosen, to slacken (Kh. сулруулах; Bu. хуларуулха; WM sularayulqu)
- suryəgaxa** to tame, to train, to break (a horse)
- suuda** soon (Kh. шууд; Bu. шууд; WM siγud)
- suuj bayxa** to sit, to sit down
- suuka** to sit
- suuri** base, foundation, base
- suuri nuryuga** vertebrae, backbone (Kh. сээр нуруу; Bu. нюрга хээр; WM seger, niruγu)
- suuree čiluu** foundation stone, cornerstone (Kh. суурь чулуу) ^{ᠡᠰᠦ}

- suyree čuluu
suyree čuluu foundation stone, cornerstone (Kh. суурь чулуу) ☞
 suyree čiluu
suysan sabu basket (Kh. сийрсэн сав)
sүjik to plait, to weave
sүkә axe
sүküj suuxa to kneel down
sүlәčin the last, final
sүlәgә poem, poetry
sүlәkә to swim
sүlәм sword, sabre (Kh. сэләм)
sүlәs saliva ☞ sүlüs
sүljikә to weave, to knit
sүlür nүdtee squint-eyed
sүlüs saliva ☞ sүlәs
sүmә kyeed monastery, temple
sүн at night
sүн dond midnight
sүнә night
sүrmәs sinew
sүrүgә herd, flock
sүtүlәgә piety, faith, worship, religion
sүü milk
sүü uuxa to drink milk
sүüdәр¹ shadow
sүüdәр² dew
sүükә to judge, to try
sүül tail
sүülčee the last, final ☞ sүülčin
sүülčin the last, final ☞ sүülčee
sүülee üyid recently
sүülәdә later
sүülүнee üd feathers of the tail
sүümjilkә to criticize
sүyдәk to ruin, to destroy

/š/

- šaajaŋ ayaga** (porcelain) bowl
šaajaŋ ədələl chinaware
šaajgay magpie
šaardaxa to demand ⇨ šaarduxa
šaarduxa to demand ⇨ šaardaxa
šabar širuu clay
šabiŋi insect
šagay anklebone, talus
šagayaku to look, to peer
šagširaxa to tut-tut, to admire, to praise
šal əsərügü exact reverse, direct opposition ⇨ əsəryəgə
šalagaalta test, examination
šaljɫax to parboil
šalnee alčuur floor-cloth
šamarga [çamarga/samarga] storm, snowstorm, blizzard (Kh. шамарга; Bu. шамарга; WM simary-a) ⇨ samarga
šanaga ladle, dipper
šaraj čansan myəka roasted and boiled meat
šarama a flattened cake (It is not identified in Mongolian and Tungus dictionaries.) (Kh. шарам 1. suffocating heat 2. water mixed with milk and boiled)
šaril [tʃʰirlə/çeril] corpse ⇨ čirlə
šarsan myəka roast meat ⇨ sarsan myəka
šaru castrated bull, ox
šata ladder ⇨ šita
šaxaltu pressure, compulsion
šeekə to urinate
šees urine
šibar baar (earthen) jar, (earthen) pot
šibar bayšiŋ clay house
šibarlag gajar bog, marsh, morass
šibnəxə to whisper
šibuu bird (Kh. шувуу; Bu. шубуу; WM sibaγu)

- šibügü** awl, drill (Kh. шөвөг WM sibüge) ⇨ xibügü
- šidkə** to throw
- šidü** tooth
- šig** like, as if
- šigəərə** straight on, straight forward
- šiidəm** club
- šiidəŋ** electric light, electric lamp (< Ch. 氣燈[qìdēng])
- šiiḡnee ulaan korkoy** earthworm (Kh. чийгийн улаан хорхой Bu. шийг ‘damp, wet’)
- šiiḡwa** watermelon
- šiiiryüḡü šüdtēe samu** coarse comb
- šiiṯḡəl** punishment, penalty
- šiiṯḡəxə** to punish
- šikür** umbrella (Kh. шүхэр Bu. шүхэр WM sikür)
- šilbə¹** trunk, stem, stalk
- šilbə²** shin, shin-bones
- šildəḡ** mattress, mat
- šildəḡə** picked, best, chosen
- šilə¹** floor
- šilə²** glass
- šilən ayəḡu** (drinking) glass
- šiliḡ abaxa** to choose
- šiljüülkə** to transfer, to hand over
- šilṯaḡ** cause, motive, pretext, excuse (Kh. шалтаг; Bu. шалтаг; WM siltaḡ)
- šilṯaḡaa** reason, cause
- šilüüs** lynx (Lynx lynx)
- šimeesəḡ** scythe
- šin** new ⇨ šinü
- šin jil** new year
- šinəḡa** ladle, dipper
- šinaxa** to boil ⇨ činaxa
- šinee arban taban** the fifteenth day of the first month of the lunar year
- šinee nəḡən** first day of a month

- šinee xoyoron** second day of a month
šineen araban taban fifteenth day of a month
šineen gurban third day of a month
šinəkən fresh
šinələkə to celebrate the new year
šinje feature, sign, characteristic
šinü new ⇨ šin
šingə bajaxa to press, to squeeze, to grab, to grasp, to manipulate
šingən thin (for tea, soup, etc.)
šingən bəki ink
šingəxu to be absorbed
šinḡay China, Chinese (< Ch. 上海[shànghǎi] ‘Shanghai city’)
šinḡor falcon
šir yellow ⇨ šira
šir budaa German millet
šir šibuu great eagle-owl
šir šubuu great eagle-owl
šir toso butter
šira yellow ⇨ šir
širaka wound
širaxa to roast, to fry
širbəkə [čirbəkə, širbəkə] to look askance
širee table
širguulj ant
širigəx to dry up
širkəgə grain, granule
širuu soil, earth
širüün rough, coarse
šiš African millet
šita ladder, stairs, staircase (Kh. шат; Bu. шата; WM šatun) ⇨ šata
šitaax to burn
šixaraxa turbid, cloudy
šixaxa to press, to impel, to urge
šobko pointed, sharp
šodoy penis

šo dūrbūljīn kəlbəri cubic, cuboid
šorbogo salty
šubuunee üür bird's nest
šubuunee xušuu beak
šugam line
šukula important
šuluun gədəs rectum
šuluun šugam straight line
šungaxa to extend
šurguulga drawer
šurugaagə mod pole, post
šudaŋee gajar [çə:dne: ɣɑɖzɑr] post office
šugantee noisy, sensational
šünjīŋgəə all night through
šütke to believe in, to worship
šüümjilkə to criticize
šüürə broom

/t/

ta you (singular, polite)
taabar riddle
taaju ceiling (Kh. raaz; WM taĵa)
taanu *Allium polyrhizum*
taarakgüy incorrect, wrong
taaraxu to fit, to suit, to meet
taaruldux to come across
taaruu mediocre, middling, not too good, poor
taba five
tabadugaar fifth
tabadugaar sar May
tabag plate, dish
tabi fifty
tabiuur shelf, stand, rack 𐰽𐰺 tabiyuur

- tabixa** to release, to let go, to free ⇔ tabixu
tabixu to put, to place ⇔ tabixa
tabiyuur shelf, stand, rack ⇔ tabiuur
tabtee quiet, undisturbed, comfortable
tabtee noyrsoryäkti Good night! Have a nice sleep!
tabyəxu to put, to place
taglaanee kalib lid
tagnuul spy
tagnuxu to spy on
tagtaa dove, pigeon
takee chicken
takilgay süm shrine
takilgay širə altar
taku horseshoe
taliigaač the late, the departed
taliyeka to lean, to deviate, to tilt, to decline
talk bread
tamaga brand
tamik tobacco
tamik tatxa to smoke (a cigarette)
tamu hell
tanil acquaintance
tanilcuulka to introduce
tanuus you (plural)
tanuusee your (plural)
tanyaagüy not to know
tanyəxu to know
taraambay streetcar (< Ru. трамва'й)
taraga tarag, a foot made from fermented milk and tastes similar
 to yoghurt
taraxu to disperse, to scatter
tarbuga marmot (Marmot baibacina sibirca)
tarbus watermelon
tareečin farmer, peasant ⇔ tariačin ayl
tareenee aaga husks, bran

- targun** fat, in good condition
tariačın ayl farm household ⇨ tareečin
tarialaŋee talbee cultivating land
tarian talbay kagalku to cultivate
tarian türüü ear, spike, head
tarianee dābuuri winnow
tarianee gajar cultivating land
tarianee kibigü [teriane: ki^wbi^wgə^w/t^heriane: k^hyβygu] outer
 husks, bran (Kh. тарианы хэвэг)
tariki brain
tarimal urgamal cultivated plant
tarixa to plant
taryabuus watermelon
tasalbara ticket, coupon
tasluxu to cut off, to tear, to tear off
tašuura whip
tataari a Tatar
tatgaljuxu to refuse, to decline, to renounce, to withdraw from
tatuxu to pull
tayağ stick, staff
taybširaxa to relax, to calm down
tayja stage
taylbarlaka to explain
tayluku to take off (clothes)
teberyəxə to embrace, to hold in the arms ⇨ təbiryəkə
telipoon utas telephone (< Ru. телефо́н)
tepegay dung, excrement, cattle dung (It is not identified in
 Mongolian, Tungus, and Russian dictionaries.)
təbiryəkə to embrace, to hold in the arms ⇨ teberyəxə
təbnə pack-needle, big needle
təd those
tədnee their
təəbərilix to transport, to carry
təg zero
təgəj to do that way

- təgš** even, smooth
təiimə like that
təjeebər nugās tame duck
təjeesən əcəx foster father
təjeesən əsəg foster father
təjeesən əxə foster mother
təlyee trouser belt, trouser string
təmbüü syphilis
təmcək to struggle for
təmcəldək to compete, to struggle, to contest
təmdəg sign, mark
təmdəgləlt üdür commemoration day, day of remembrance
təməə camel
təməəljiɡən cricket
tənəx to wander
təŋgər sky ⇨ təngrə
təŋgəree duu thunderbolt
tənüüčilək to wander
tər¹ he, she, it (personal and demonstrative pronoun)
tər² that (demonstrative adjective)
tərbüm billion
tərə that ⇨ tər²
tərə jüg that direction
tərəg cart, wagon
tərgəl saran full moon
tərgün ursgal rapids, fast-flowing stream (Kh. түргэн урсгал;
 Bu. түргэн; WM türgen)
təsəx to bear, to put up with
təygbəl then, if so ⇨ tiigbəl
tiigbəl then, if so ⇨ təygbəl
tiim Yes!
tiim bayna it is like that
tiimə in that manner
tiimii sayn biš not so good
tiišee to that direction

- tijēexə** to raise, to feed ⇔ тэјеебэр нугас, тэјеесэн асэх, тэјеесэн асэг, тэјеесэн ахэ, etc.
- todorokoy** clear, definite
- todorokoygüy** unclear, uncertain, indefinite
- togloom¹** game, play
- togloom²** toy
- togolku** to play (Kh. ТОГЛОХ)
- togoloxo** to play, to perform (Kh. ТОГЛОХ)
- togoo** cauldron
- togoruu** crane
- togšix** to knock
- togtolocoo** system
- togtoxo** to be formed, to come into existence
- tokioldol** case, occurrence, chance, circumstances, situation
- tokom** saddle cloth/felt placed under the gülmə
- tokoy** elbow
- tolgayn əbčün** headache ⇔ tolgayn əbüčün
- tolgayn əbüčün** headache ⇔ tolgayn əbčün
- tolgoylogči** chief, head, boss
- toli bičig** dictionary
- tologaym übüsəə** to have a headache ('My head is aching')
- tologoy** head
- tolyi** mirror
- tom bacagan** eldest daughter
- tom küü** eldest son
- tomo** big
- tomoxo** to twist, to spin
- tono** ton (1,000kg)
- tonšuul** woodpecker
- tongoylgoxo** to bend over
- tongrə** god ⇔ тэнгэр (Kh. ТЭНГЭР; Bu. ТЭНГЭРИ; WM tngri)
- too** number, figure
- too kəmjee** quantity
- toocoko** to calculate, to account, to compute
- toolko** to count

- toon təmdəg** figure, numeral
toono wooden roof-ring of the Mongol tent
toora peach
toorko barrel, cask (Kh. топх)
toosga brick
tooso dust
torgo silk
torgon utas silk thread
toro net
tortogo bolxo to get sooty, to get grimy
tos oil
tos šilxəxə to squeeze oil from
totgonee mod lintel
totxon village (Kh. тосгон; Bu. тосхон; WM tosqon)
toyrku to go round
töörükə to get lost
traagtor tractor (< Ru. трактор)
tuga flag, standard
tugala calf
tugalaga lead (Pb)
tukaylbal in fact, actually, as a matter of fact
turaxa to get thin, to lose weight
turšyylaga experience
turuu hoof
tus tus each, individually, separately
tus tusdaa separately, respectively
tuslalcaxa to help each other
tuslaxa to help
tušaal order, command
tutaraga rice
tuuj novelette
tuuka to drive (cattle)
tuulay hare, rabbit
tuyaarxa to shine, to gleam, to glisten
tuyladaka to be tired (Kh. туйлдах)

tüb center

tübüg trouble, nuisance, inconvenience

tübügtee difficult, troublesome, intricate, complicated

tüdgəljəxə to abstain, to refrain

tügürüg *tügrig* (Mongolian currency unit)

tül young animal, new born animal

tülbülgə plan

tülee modo firewood

tülkəkə to push

tülküür key

tülši fuel

tülükə¹ to burn, to make a fire

tülükə² to pay

tümə ten thousands ⇔ arban miŋga, arban myəŋga

tümpün bowl, basin (< ch. 銅盆[tóngpén])

tümur iron

tümür dabtaku to beat iron, to forge iron

tümür jam railroad

tümür utas iron wire

tümüsə potatoes

tümüsgə testicle

tünd there ⇔ tənd

tünteek bulging, protuberant, convex

tür temporal

tür juura for a while, temporarily ⇔ türü juura

tür nayr wedding ceremony

türgixə to spread on, to apply

türiite gutal boots

türsün nutag native place

türsün üdür birthday

türü juura for a while, temporarily ⇔ tür juura

türükə to be born

türül sadan relatives

türüükə to give birth to

türüülkə to come first, to be ahead, to lead, to overtake

tüstee like, similar
tüüj abxa to pick up
tüük¹ history
tüük² to pick, to collect, to gather
tüükee¹ suppuration, sore
tüükee² raw
tüükee myəka raw meat
tüükee süü raw milk
tüükee yüm raw stuff, uncooked food
tyəmuul mosquito ⇨ čumuul

/u/

učir reason
učiro reason
udaa kübüün second son ⇨ udaa küü
udaa küü second son ⇨ udaa kübüün
udaa küükən [øta: k^hʌ:k^hiŋ] second daughter
udaa modo [øta: madə] willow, salix ⇨ modo
udaan slow, slowly
udagan female shaman (Kh. удган; Bu. удаган; WM iduγan/
 iduγan) ⇨ ədəgan
udaxa to tarry, to stay, to last a long time, to be a long time
ugaaku to wash
uglaaš slippers
ugtaxa to greed, to receive, to welcome
ukaantee clever
ukaarka to understand, to realize
ukaraxa to retreat, to go backward ⇨ uxraxa
ukaxa to dig
ukin maiden, maid
ukn breeding he-goat (Kh. ухна; Bu. ухана; WM uqun-a/uqan-a)
ulaan red
ulaan buuday wheat

ulaan buudayn guril wheat flour
ulaan buurcag red-bean
ulaan jäs red copper
ulaan yagaan purple
ulad country, state ⇔ **ulas**, **ulus**
ulam 1 gradually
ulas country, state ⇔ **ulad**, **ulus**
ulas tür politics
ulasee kaan king
ulbagur weak (for a person)
uliral season
ulus contrt, nation ⇔ **ulad**, **ulas**
ulyaangar mod aspen
ulyaas poplar (Kh. улиас; Бу. уляаһан)
umara north
unaa mount, transport, vehicle
unaga colt
unagaaka to drop
unaka¹ to fall, to be drowned
unaka² to mount (a horse)
unalaganeе mori riding horse
unaxa to fall, to be drowned
undaa beverage
uni house rafter
untaglaxa to pulverize, to reduce to powder
untaka to sleep
untraaxa 1. to put out a fire 2. to turn off
uᅅgaka to break wind, to fart
uᅅgas fart, gas, wind
uᅅšixa [ᅅᅅeᅅaxa] to read
ura tumor, swelling
urada south
uragaca crops, harvest
uragdaxa to be torn
uragšee forwards

uraka to bite

uramšuulka to encourage

uraxa to tear, to tear up

urca hut, shack, tent set up for temporary use with the least wooden frames

urgamal plant

urguulka to grow

urid sün last night

urid üdür ny previous day

urid ümün previously, before

urjee urjigdar three days ago, two days before yesterday

urjigdar day before yesterday

urjīnan the year before last

ursaxa to flow

urta¹ length

urta² long

urtasgaxa to lengthen, to extend

uru čidwar artistry, skill

uruu towards

uruula lip

us water

usan oncoc boat, vessel

usan oncocnee jogcool marina, dock

usan saṅ water-tank, cistern

usan üjüm grape

usand abtaxa be flooded, to be inundated, to be submerged

usand dal oroko to sink under water, to submerged under water

usand oroxo to take a bath

usanee ərgүүлgi whirlpool

usanee gutal rubber boots

usanee san reservoir

usul tal weak point, shortcoming, defect, demerit ᠰᠤᠯᠲᠠᠯ sul tal

utaa smoke

utaga meaning

utas thread

utgaxa to scoop up, to ladle
uučlal ərəx to apologize, to ask for forgiveness
uuka to drink
uul mountain
uulanaas uruusxa to go down a mountain
uuland garaku to go up a mountain
uulee kir mountain ridge, crest ☞ uuliin kir
uulee orgil summit, peak
uulee oroy mountain peak
uuli owl
uuliin kir mountain ridge, crest ☞ uulee kir
uuljalta meeting, get-together
uuljaxa to meet
uulnee bel foot of a hill, low slopes of a mountain
uura vapour, steam
uura nüdüür mortar and pestle
uuraga horse-catching pole
uurga colostrum
uurga tarika brain
uurlaxa to get angry
uuska to dissolve
uušig lung
uušignee süryəə pulmonary tuberculosis
uxraxa to retreat ☞ ukaraxa
uyan katan flexible, supple
uyilka to cry
uytgarlaxa melancholy, sad, despondent
uytgartee dull, boring, depressing

/ü/

übčün illness, sickness, disease ☞ cəcəg əbüčün
übčün tusaka to become ill
übčitən patient

- übägün** old man (Kh. өвгөн; Bu. үбгэн)
übüdэгэ knee (Kh. өвдөг; Bu. үбдэг)
übül winter (Kh. өвөл; Bu. үбэл)
übüs grass (Kh. өвс; Bu. үбхэн)
übüs nogoo julgaaku to pull up grass
ücээ rarely, few (Kh. цөөн; Bu. үсөөн)
üčigдэр yesterday (Kh. өчигдөр; Bu. үсэгэлдэр)
üd дунд noon
üдэ feather
üдээс tie, binding, lace
üдээс үмүн before noon
üдээс хойш afternoon
üдэкэ to see off, to send off, to bid farewell to
üдэр day, daytime (Kh. өдөр; Bu. үдэр) ⇔ **üдүр**
üдүр day, daytime (Kh. өдөр; Bu. үдэр) ⇔ **üдэр**
üдүр болгон [utur бэлэгэн] everyday (Kh. өдөр болгон; Bu. үдэр болгон)
üdüree kool lunch (Kh. өдрийн хоол; Bu. үдэрэй хоол)
üdüүгэ now (Kh. өдгөө)
үг yaree talk (Kh. үг яриа; Bu. үгэ яряа)
үгээкэ to lose (Kh. гээх; Bu. гээхэ) ⇔ **гээкэ**
үгээмэр generous, rich, plentiful (Kh. өгөөмөр)
үгiiлэхэ to drive (cattle) ⇔ **giilэхэ**
үгүлэ [uklээ] morning (Kh. өглөө; Bu. үглөө)
үгүлэ бүри [uklээ buri/үглээ buri] every morning (Kh. өглөө бүр; Bu. үглөө бүри)
үгүлэnee kool [үгүлэnee k^h:ɛ:] breakfast (Kh. өглөөний хоол; Bu. үглөөнэй хоол)
үгүүлэг short story (Kh. өгүүлэг)
үгүхэ to give (Kh. өгөх; Bu. үгэхэ)
үгү No! (Kh. Үгүй!; Bu. Үгы!)
үгү болоко to extinct
üilčilэкэ# to serve
үжэгэ pen (for writing)
үжэкэ to see

- üjäl surtal** ideology
üjän yadaka to hate
üjүүләкә to show (the contents)
üjүүr point, end, tip
üjүүләкә to sharpen, to bring to a point
ükәкә to die
ükәl death
ükin düü younger sister (Kh. охин дүү; WM ökin degüü) ☞ ukin
üköörikән cute, attractive (Kh. хөөрхөн; Bu. хөөрхән; WM kögerken) ☞ kәәrkән
ükür cattle (Kh. үхәр; Bu. үхәр)
ükürčün cattle breeder, cowherd
üküree mykәә beef
ülbyәnki racoon dog (Kh. элбәнх; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM elbengkü)
üldәкә to keep, to retain 1768
üldәкә to remain, to stay, to be left behind ☞ ülüdәкә
üldögдәl remnant, remains, leftovers
üleek to blow
үлгәхә to hang (Kh. өлгөх; Bu. үлгэхә; WM elgükü/ölgökü)
үлигәр story, tale (Kh. үлгәр; Bu. үльгәр)
үлтәгәләң [ult^hәүәләңә, urt^hgәләң] hunger, fasting (Kh. өлсгөлөн; Bu. үләсхәлән; WM ölüsküleng) ☞ ürtgәлән
үлү mör footprint, trace, track (Kh. ул мөр; Bu. мүр ула)
үлүдәкә to remain, to stay ☞ üldәкә
үлүгәкә togoo hanging cauldron
үлүsk to starve, to hunger (Kh. өлсөх; Bu. үлдэхә; WM ölöskü)
үмәд trousers (Kh. өмд; Bu. үмдә; WM ömödü)
үмәхirisән mod dead tree (Kh. өмхийрсән мод; Bu. үмхирхән модо; WM ömükeiregsen modu)
үмгәәlkә to protect, to defend (Kh. өмгөөлөх; Bu. үмәглэхә; WM ömüglekü)
үмүгләә clay house (It sounds like a Mongolian word but not identified in dictionaries.) ☞ әмүгләә
үмүн south, front

- ümüskə** to put on (clothes) (Kh. өмсөх; Bu. үмдэхэ; WM emüskü)
- üncəx** corner, angle (Kh. өнцөг; Bu. үнсэг; WM öncög) ⇔ üncög
- üncög** corner, angle (Kh. өнцөг; Bu. үнсэг; WM öncög) ⇔ üncəx
- ünčün kəəgəd** orphan (Kh. өнчин хүүхэд; Bu. үншэн үхивүүн; WM önöčün keüked) ⇔ ünčün küügüd
- ünčün küügüd** orphan (Kh. өнчин хүүхэд; Bu. үншэн үхивүүн; WM önöčün keüked) ⇔ ünčün kəəgəd
- ündər** 1. high 2. hight (Kh. өндөр; Bu. үндэр; WM öndör) ⇔ ündür
- ündəs** root, base, foundation (Kh. үндэс; Bu. үндэхэ; WM ündüsü) ⇔ ündös, ündüsə
- ündös** root, base, foundation (Kh. үндэс; Bu. үндэхэ; WM ündüsü) ⇔ ündəs, ündüsə
- ündöstən** nationality, race (Kh. үндэстэн; WM ündüsüten)
- ündüg [unduk]** egg (Kh. өндөг; Bu. үндэгэ; WM öndege)
- ündüg daraxu [undug taraxə/untug taraxə]** to hatch, to brood
- ündür [undərə/undur]** 1. high 2. hight (Kh. өндөр; Bu. үндэр; WM öndör) ⇔ ündər
- ündür nirugutee** tall
- ündür ünə** high price
- ündüsə** root, base, foundation (Kh. үндэс; Bu. үндэхэ; WM ündüsü) ⇔ ündəs, ündös
- ünə [unə]** price (Kh. үнэ; Bu. үнэ; WM ün-e)
- ünə cən** value, price (Kh. үнэ цэн; Bu. үнэ сэн)
- ünəg** fox (Kh. үнэг; Bu. үнэгэ; WM ünege)
- ünər garxu** to smell (intransitive)
- ünərləkə** to smell (transitive) (Kh. үнэрлэх; WM ünürlekü)
- ünör** smell (Kh. үнэр; Bu. үнэр; WM ünür)
- üntee** expensive (Kh. үнэтэй; Bu. үнэтэй; WM ünetei)
- ünün** true, truth (Kh. үнэн; Bu. үнэн; WM ünən)
- ününči bayka** sincere, faithful
- ününəəsə tiim** It is really so, It is truly so
- ünüsəkə** to kiss (Kh. үнсэх; WM ünüskü)
- ünyee** cow (Kh. үнээ; Bu. үнээ; WM üniiy-e)
- ünḡii ny ergüülkə** to turn over, to turn inside out ⇔ ərgüülki

- üŋgü** color (Kh. өнгө; Bu. үнгэ; WM öngge) ☞ әңгү
üŋgürsün past
üŋgürsün sara last month
üŋgürsün üdürüüd old days
üŋgürxə to pass (Kh. өнгөрөх; Bu. үнэгэрхэ; WM önggerekü)
üŋkərxə to roll (Kh. өнхрөх; WM ömkerekü)
ürčiləə wrinkle, crease ☞ үрчлээ
ürčləə wrinkle, crease ☞ үрчилээ
ürə ači offsprings
ürə ašigi effectiveness
ürə düŋ result
ürə jimis fruit
ürə jimis dəlgərxə to fruit
ürə koni wether (Kh. эр хонь) ☞ әрə mori, etc.
ürəə room
ürəəsən nidütee one-eyed person ☞ ürəəsən nyüdütee
ürəəsən nyüdütee one-eyed person ☞ ürəəsən nidütee
ürəgən 1. wide 2. area 3. width, breadth
ürəkə to rub
ürgəkə 1. to lift 2. to offer, to present
ürgəljləkə to go on, to continue
ürgəljlülüəkə to continue
ürgəməl bacagan adoptive daughter
ürgəməl kübüün adoptive son
ürgən 1. wide 2. area 3. width, breadth
ürgən jam wide road
ürgən tal plain
ürgəs thorn
ürgəst kəmkə cucumber
üri seed
üri čačka to scatter (seeds)
ürkü ayl household(s)
ürnə west
üršəngüy [urçəŋgue] gracious, merciful, kind
ürtgələŋ hunger, fasting (Kh. өлсгөлөн; Bu. үлэсхэлэн; WM

- ölüsküleng) 𐰣𐰆𐰪 ültägäləŋ
ürübdəkə# to pity, to feel sorry for, to take pity on
ürümə awl, drill
üründ oroxo to get into debt
ürxü gər home
üsə hair, hair of one's head, hair of one's body
üsəə abkuulka to get one's hair cut
üsəkə to grow
üsgee heel
üsgəxə to bring up, to raise, to rear
üsrəkə to leap, to jump, to skip
üsügə letter, character
üsün hair of human body
üsünee kaaga dandruff, scurf
üsütee gutal fur boots
üsütee malaguy fur hat
üšigiləxə to kick
ütügün 1. strong (for tea, soup etc.), 2. dense, thick
üüdə door
üüdən šüdü front tooth, incisor
üülə cloud
üür dawn, daybreak
üür cayka to dawn
üürəgə duty, burden
üürkə to bear a thing on one's shoulder, to carry on the back
üyeerə flood
üyə period, time
üyəəl cousins
üyəəl bacagan niece
üyəəl əgəči düü cousins (When the elder one is a female)
üyəəl kübüü nephew
üyəəl küü nephew
üyl ajillaga activity, work, function
üyl yabadal process, doings, event
üylčülüüləgč customer, client

üyldbərləxə to produce
üyldəbərə factory
üysən tüys tall birch-bark vessel
üyü məc joint

(/w/)

waara pot ☞ baara¹
waaran ədləl ceramics

/x/

xabyərgan sara crescent moon, new moon ☞ kabirgan sara
xadagaluulka to save
xadasan öbs hay, dried grass ☞ kadasan öbs
xaduku to mow, to reap ☞ kaduxu
xaduurka to harden, to get hard
xagaruxu¹ to shatter, to be broken (intransitive)
xagaruxu² to crack, to split, to break
xaqšixa to contract, to shrink ☞ agšixa (Kh. агших Бу. агшаха
 WM aysiqu)
xajuxa to bite ☞ kajuxa
xalgu palm ☞ algu
xalisulku to peel ☞ kalisluku
xaltarij unaxa to slip and fall
xaluxu to heat
xamaarka to depend on ☞ kamaarka
xamalalt promise ☞ amalalt
xamaree nük nostrils ☞ kamaree nük
xandaj kələx to appeal ☞ xandaj xələx
xandaj xələx to appeal ☞ xandaj kələx
xanguxu to supply
xara kükü indigo, dark deep blue ☞ kar kükü

- xara salki** typhoon, hurricane
xaraaxan hardly, not yet
xaragljaxa to supervise, to look after ☞ karagljaxu
xaramči stingy, misery ☞ karamči
xargilaga swift stream flowing over stones
xarigixan shallow (water) ☞ karigixan
xarii бүрий болхо to grow dark ☞ karee бүрий болко
xariuulka to repay, to requite ☞ kariuulka
xaryaaləgdəxə to be subordinate to, to be within the preview of,
to come under the jurisdiction of ☞ karyaaaləgdəxə
xasag Kazakh ☞ kasag
xašee fence
xaši šeluu jade ☞ kaši čuluu
xašilag fence ☞ kašilag
xatuxu to dry up ☞ katuxu
xayaal aka дүү male second cousins
xaylaas elm tree
xələlcəər negotiation ☞ kələlcəər
xələlcəx to discuss, to converse ☞ kələlcəx
xəsəg juur for a while
xibügü awl, drill ☞ šibügü
xolyəxo to mix ☞ kolyəxo
xoničin shepherd
xoninee myəka mutton
xonjuu gain, profit ☞ konjuu
xool kiik to cook
xool künüs food
xoolonee tikinolog cookery, culinary art (< Ru. техноло́гия)
(Kh. хоолны технологи)
xooslxo to empty out ☞ kooslko
xoridugaar twentieth ☞ koridugaar
xorigilogu to prohibit, to forbid, to ban
xoyor juu two hundreds ☞ koyor juu
xoyor kün two people ☞ koyor kün
xoyordugaar dabkar second floor

- xoyordugaar sar** February
xoyordugaarčə February
xoyšo backwards
xoyuulaa two of us together ⇄ koyuulaa
xubiŋ pail, bucket (< Chinese 壺瓶[húpíng])
xučixa to cover, to cover up ⇄ kučixa
xuda daughter-in-law's relatives
xudaguy son-in-law's relatives
xudldaačín merchant
xugacaa period, time, term ⇄ kugacaa
xugurxa to break, to be broken, to be fractured
xulanc xügšee great-great-grandfather ⇄ kulanc kügšee
xulčigar timid, fearful
xulgaylaxa to steal
xuuray dry ⇄ kuuray, kuuree, xuuree
xuuray bək ink-stick ⇄ xuuray bəxi
xuuray bəxi ink-stick ⇄ xuuray bək
xuuree dry ⇄ kuuree, xuuray, kuuray
xuuree ax elder sister's husband. The word xyypай ('dry') is used as an attribute to denote someone who is regarded as one's own family member but who is not related in blood or marriage in Khalkha, which is similar to the Chinese 干[gān] 'dry'. An Alar Buriat consultant of 1997 fieldwork study, Mrs. Eleonora Vladimirovna Tumurova (41 years old) used the word xuuree axa for 'husband'. ⇄ kuuree axa
xüči power ⇄ küči, xüčütee, etc.
xüči təŋkəə strength, vigour
xüčütee casan šuurag snowstorm, blizzard
xüčünee kəmjəə degree of strength, intensity
xüčütee strong ⇄ kučütee, küči, etc.
xügšin xün old person ⇄ kügšin kün
xüknee tobči nipple
xülüsülkə to employ
xüreelkə to surround, to make a circle
xürkə to get cold, to cool down

xüügээ үргэж abaxa to adopt a child

xüügүн child

xüүхэн karaa pupil of the eye

/y/

yaaguud why

yaaj how

yaaruxu to hurry

yaasan č never, no matter what

yabaka to go, to leave

yabuulka to send

yadam kuruu ring finger

yadaruka to be tired

yaduu poor

yaduurka poverty

yag quite, just, exactly

yagaan pink

yaht mälәkee turtle (Kh. яст мэлхий; Бу. яаһатай 'having bone',
мэлхэй 'turtle') ⇔ yast mälәkee

yalaanee üt maggot

yalagdul defeat

yalaltu victory

yalaxa to win, to defeat

yalgaxa to separate, to distinguish

yaljarxa to rot, to decay

yamaa goat

yamaan sakul beard, goatee

yamagta always ⇔ yamakuta

yamakuta always ⇔ yamagta

yamaru what kind of

yamaru nәgә any, some

yamaru nәgә yüm something

yancgaax [jencgaax] to neigh, to whinny

- yandaŋ** chimney
yanju appearance
yanju büree all kinds of
yanju yanju all sorts of, various
yantay writing brush (It might be a confused answer of our consultant since the Khalkha янтай is 'ink stone, ink slab' as Chinese 砚台 [yàntai].)
yaria story, tale
yarilcuxu to converse, to dalg to each other
yariyæka to speak, to talk ⇔ yaryuku
yaruu nayryæga poem, poetry
yaruu tanasag noble, lofty, elegant, elevated
yaryuku to speak, to talk ⇔ yariyæka
yast mælækee turtle ⇔ yaht mælækee
yastan ethnic group
yasu bone ⇔ jagasnee isə, ystan, etc.
yərə ninety ⇔ yörü
yopooska a flattened cake (< Ru. лепёшка?)
yoslol ceremony
yoslon tæmdæglækə to celebrate
yoso jirum order, propriety
yörü ninety ⇔ yərə
yuu what
yuund why, for what
yügedæxə to speak ironically, to poke fun
yüklæxə to start, to begin ⇔ eklæxə
yüm thing
yüræsəə (not) at all (negative polarity)
yürünkiilögči president
yüsü nine
yüsüdügær sar September
yüülkə to pour, to drain, to empty

Appendix 2

Basic Conversational Expressions

1. First meeting

1. How do you do?
ta sayn baynat gü
2. Is your herd passing summer healthy and fine?
mal sürüg tany targan saykan/sayxan jusaĵ bayna gü
3. Fine. How are you?
sayn sayn ta sayn baynat gü
4. What is the news?
soniĵ saykan/sayxan yuutee be
5. I am fine. My name is Tsetsegmaa.
taybaĵ saykan bayna minyee nәр cәcәgmaa
6. What is your name?
tanyee aldar kән
7. My name is Tsetsegmaa.
minyee/minii nәр cәcәgmaa
8. Where is your home town?
ta ali nutagee күnt
9. I am a Khamnigan.
bi kamnigaĵ күnbi
10. This is my first time coming here.
bi әnd aĵk udaa irbәbi
11. Where do you live?

- ta kaan amdranat
12. I live in Binder *sum* at the moment.
odoo bindərt suuᠯ baynabi
13. What kind of work are you doing?
ta yamar mərgəjlteet
14. I am a teacher.
bi surguulid baḡšalnabi
15. What kind of work are you doing?
ta yuu kiidəgt/xiidəgt
16. I breed horses.
bi aduučinbi
17. How many people are there all together in your family?
tanayx am бүл кэдүүлэст
18. There is my father and mother. There is my wife. Then there is
my daughter and son.
aba ijii əkənər тэгээд okin күбүүн бii
19. What brings you here?
ta ənd yamar aḡilaar irəт
20. I came here to see my elder brother and younger sister.
ənd aka okin дүү koyortoygoo/koyortoygoo uuljaxaar irbəbi
21. Please get what you want and go.
jorison kərəgəə saykan бүтэгээд yabaaree

2. Visiting

22. How do you do?
ta sayn baynat gü
23. I am fine. How do you do?
sayn ta sayn bayna uu
24. Is your husband at home?
nükür tany gərtəə bayna gü
25. He went out.
tər gaduur garasan
26. When will he come back?

- kəjəə irkə be
27. He is coming soon.
- udaxagüy irkə
28. Is there any business?
- aḵilaar irsən gü
29. Yes. I have something to ask from your husband.
- tiiməə tanay nükürəəs lablaka yüm bayna
30. Please come in!
- ta orogtii
31. Oh, yes. Restrain your dog please!
- jaa nokoygoo koriyi (literally ‘Well, let us keep down your dog!’)
32. Take off your overcoat!
- palitoogoo taylarəgtii
33. Please take a seat!
- ta suugtii
34. Would you like to smoke?
- tamik/tamix tatagtii
35. I don’t smoke.
- bi tamix tatagči ügüybi (‘I am not a smoker.’)
36. Did you have your meal?
- ta kooloo idsənt gü
37. I had my meal.
- idsəən.¹⁾
38. Where have you come from?
- ta kaanaas irsənt
39. I came out from Ulaanbaatar and dropped by at Murun on the way here.
- ulaanbaataraas mürüḵ dayraad²⁾ irsənbi
40. Where are you going now?
- odoo kaaguur yabakat

1) It seems that the vowel in the second syllable is prolonged for the purpose of emphasis.

2) Its phonetic form may be near to [ta^hɾ^ha^w:t], or [ta^hɾ^hø:t].

41. I am going to Khankh.
kaŋka yabakabi
42. How many people are there in your family?
tanayk/tanayk kədүүлээт/хэдүүлээт
43. How many grown-ups?
kədэн tomo күн байнат
44. There are two men.
koyor/xoyor эрэгтєє
45. There is one woman.
нэгэ эмэгтєє
46. There are three children.
gurban күүкүдтєєби
47. How old is your biggest child?
tomo ny kədэн nasutee
48. He is eight years old.
nayman nasutee
49. Did your husband come back?
tanyee нүкүр ирээ гү
50. He has not come back.
ирээгүй байна
51. Then is there anyone who came?
тэгбэл кэн нэгэн күн ирээ гү
52. Nobody has come.
кэн ч ирээгүй
53. Now my husband has come back!
sayi нүкүр маань ирлээ
54. Is everybody fine? Are you all traveling well?
sayn baycgaana үү аян jamdaa sayn yabaјina үү
55. Fine, thank you.
sayn sayn bayarлалаа
56. What is the news?
soniŋ saykan/sayxan yuutee be
57. Everything is just fine.
taybaŋ saykan байна
58. Are you passing the summer healthy and well?

- targan sayxan jusaĵ baynat gü
59. Fine, fine.
sayxan
60. Have you been to Khankh?
kaŋkad/xaŋkad očij üjsənt gü
61. I have been there three times.
gurban udaa očisonbi
62. How many households are there?
tər činy kədən ürkü ayltee gajar be
63. There are more than two hundred households.
koyor juu garee ürkü ayltee
64. How big is Khentii *aimag*?
(1) kəntee aymagee nutag dəbsgəree kəmjee kər be ('What is the size of the territory of the Xentii *aimag*?)
(2) xəntii aymagee nutag dəbsgəree kəmjee ny kər be ('As for the size of the territory of the Xentii *aimag*, how much is it?')
65. It is eighty thousand three hundred square kilometers.
nayan myaŋga gurban juu kabtgay dürbüljin kəlimiitər talbay gajartee
66. In which year, was Khentii *aimag* established?
kəntee aymag kədiid bayguulagdasan be
67. It was established in 1942.
myaŋga yüsün juun düčin koyor ond bayguulagdasan
68. Where is the *aimag*'s center?
(1) aymagiin түб хаан байдаг байгчи be
(2) aymagiin түб хаан байгчи be
69. It is in Öndörkhaan.
(1) үндүрxaand байка бii
(2) үндүрxaand бii
70. How many Khamnigan people are there in Kentii *aimag*?
odoo kəntee aymagt kamnigaŋ kün kər olon bayna
71. About one thousand.
myaŋga orčim kün бii
72. The meal is cooked.

- (1) kool bolčikoloo ('The meal has completely become.')
- (2) kool/xool boljiino ('The meal is becoming.')
73. Bring it here please!
naaši ny abaad irəgtii
74. Please have a meal!
jaa barigtii
75. Oh, thank you!
jaa bayarlababi
76. The water is boiling.
us bucaljiina
77. Please have tea!
cay uugaarəgtii
78. Give me some more tea please!
cay nəməj ügəərəgtii
79. I am leaving first.
bi əkləd yabaĵiigtbi
80. When are you coming again?
dakiad xəjəə irkət
81. I will come tomorrow.
margaaši dakiad irkəbi
82. I have caused you too much trouble.
tand ix түбүг čiərgdəl bolbobi
83. Thank you!
bayarlalaa
84. See you again!
bayartee

3. Hunting

85. Let us go hunting!
aŋguučlayi
86. Let's do that!
təgyi
87. Let us go on horseback!

- morior yabaxamana gü
88. Prepare the horses!
morio bəlsəgtii
89. We can not go today.
münəəsər yabaĵ čadaxagüybid
90. Why can you not go?
yagaad yabaĵ čadaxagüyt
91. I have no horse.
mori bayxagüy
92. You may go on my horse!
minyee/minii morior yabaĵ bolxo l doo
93. Are you ready?
bəltgələə xaŋgaat gü
94. Where is a good place to go hunting?
aba kiixə ayitaykan gajar kaan bayna
95. Where is a good place to go hunting?
kaa kaanuur³⁾ aŋd yabbal dər
96. I know.
bi mədəxəbi
97. Follow me!
minyee araas yabaarəgtii
98. Are there wild pigs?
tənd jərləg gakay bii gü
99. A lot.
maši ik bayka oo
100. Are there tigers?
bara bayxa gü
101. There are no tigers at all these days.
(1) süüleen üyd ogt bayxagüy
(2) süülee üyd ogt bayxagüy
102. Then what kind of animals are there?
tiigbəl yamar yamar jərləg amitan baygči
103. There are wild pigs, wolves, roe deers, bears, and other

3) More expected form is /kaaguur/ 'toward where'.

animals.

(1) jərləg gaxay čon boro gürəəs baabgay gəkə mətiin amidad
bayxa baa ('There are wild pigs, wolves, roe deers, bears,
and other animals.')

(2) jərləg gaxay baabgay gürəəs čon gəkə mətiin amidad
bayxa ('There are wild pigs, bears, roe deers, wolves, and
other animals.')

104. Let us go faster!

jaa kurdan/xurdan yabayəgtii

105. Wait a moment!

jaaxan külyəgtii

106. There is a roe deer.

təər tənd boro gürəəs bayna

107. I will go this way.

bi iišee yabaqtbii

108. You wait at the edge of that stream.

tər golee ərəg dəər külyəgərəgtii

109. I see.

jaa tiigyi ('Ok., lets do that way.')

110. Oh, I hit it!

xəəg onočixloo

111. What did you hit?

yuu barisant

112. It's a roe deer!

boro gürəəs

113. Here are the bear's footprints.

ənd baabgayn mür bayna

114. These two are yesterday's footprints.

üčügdəree koyor mür bayna ('There are yesterday's two
footprints.')

115. Where did the bear go?

baabgay xayšaa yabasan naa be⁴⁾

4) Its phonetic transcription may be nearer to [pa:wɬæe χæçə: jawǎːsǎŋ na:we]. The [na:] part is unexplainable within my knowledge.

116. Oh, it seems it went far.
kolo yabasan šig bayna
117. There are wolves in the peak of that mountain.
təər təər uulee origild čono bayna
118. Let us tie the horses and go by foot!
moriyee uyij tabičikaad yabagan yabasuy
119. I will go alone.
bi gancaaraa yabagtbi
120. Watch out!
bolgaamjtee yabaarəgtii
121. There are pheasants.
gurguultee bayna
122. I will shoot.
bi buudagtbi
123. Go and see please!
očijü üjügt
124. Did you hit it?
onoboči gü
125. I hit it!
onosoon onoson
126. Which part did you hit?
ali xəsəgii ny onoboči
127. Which part did you aim at?
ali xəsəgiig oniloboči
128. I shot at the head.
tolgoyd ny onosonbi
129. I will shoot next time.
daraa ny bi buudagtbi
130. It became dark. Let us sleep in the forest.
(1) xaraŋkuy bolloo oyd untayəgtii
(2) xaraŋkuy bolbo oyd untayəgtii

4. Taking a rest

131. We are tired a little bit.
jaaxan yadaraǰ baynabid
132. Where shall we rest?
kaan/xaan amarakabid
133. Let us rest here!
ənd amarayi
134. Erect the tent!
maykan bariaryəgtii
135. Take off the saddle!
mörineegoo əməəl abaryəgtii
136. Where is the water?
us kaana/xaana bayna
137. It is over there.
təər tənd bayna
138. Let the horses get watered.
moridoo uslayəgtii
139. Put the horses in the fetters!
moridoo čüdürləryəgtii
140. Watch the horses!
moridoo xaraaregtii
141. Bring the grass!
ubs abčiraaregtii
142. Let us make a fire and get smoke!
gal asaagaad utaa tabiyəgtii
143. Light the lamp please!
dəŋ bariyəgtii
144. I am sleepy.
noyr kürjiinə
145. I am going to sleep.
untayəgtii
146. You go to sleep first!
ta əkəlǰ/əxəlǰ amaarəgtii
147. Ok, I will do so.

- jaa tǝgyi
 148. You sleep here!
 ǝnd noyrsooryǝgtii

5. Rising in the morning and Departure

149. Day has broken!
 gegee orloo
 150. Would you get up!
 bosooree
 151. Did you wake up already?
 ali xǝdiin bosoot gü
 152. Did you sleep well last night?
 üngürsǝn šün ta saykan/sayxan noyrsoobo uu⁵⁾
 153. I slept well.
 saykan amarlaa
 154. Is there water in the washbasin?
 tümpünd us bayna gü
 155. Bring the towel and soap!
 sabaŋ alčuur abaad ir
 156. Let us wash our faces!
 garaa nüürǝ ugaayi
 157. Rinse your mouth please!
 amaa jaylarǝgtii
 158. Did the horses eat grass?
 morid übs idbǝ gü
 159. Yes, they ate well.
 tiimǝ sayn idjee
 160. Bring the horses!
 morid abaad irǝgtii
 161. Let us go driving the horses!
 moridoo tuugaad yabayi

5) It is Khalkha form. Expected form is /gü/.

162. Let us go fast!
türgün yabayəgtii
163. Where does this road go?
ənə jam kaan kürkə/xürkə be
164. This is the road to Khatgal.
katgalaruu yabaka/yabaxa jam
165. Is there a road which goes in that direction?
tiišee yabaxa jam bayгаа gü
166. That place is muddy.
tənd šabar balčigtee
167. It is hard to go.
yabaxad kəjüü
168. Is this road good to go?
ənə jam sayn gü
169. This is a shortcut.
ənə dütü jam
170. What is the name of the mountain?
tər yamar nərtee uul
171. That is Khentii Khan mountain.
tər kəntii/xəntii xan bayna

6. Weather

172. How is the weather?
cag agaar yamar bayna
173. It is fine.
saykan bayna
174. How is it outside?
gadaa yamar bayna
175. It is cloudy.
üültee bayna
176. It is clear.
cəlməg bayna
177. The sky has become clear.

- təŋgər cəlməjiinə
 178. It rained all night long.
 boroo šünjɪŋgəə oroo
179. The rain stopped .
 boroo jogsloo
180. Let us go fast!
 türgün yabayəgtii
181. It is snowing.
 cas orojiino
182. The weather is cold.
 təŋgər küytəŋ bayna
183. I am getting cold.
 bi daarajiinabi
184. From where is the wind blowing today?
 münəədür kaanaas salkiljiina
185. It is a northerly wind.
 koynoos/xoynoos salkiljiina

7. Food and drink

186. Did you eat your meal?
 xooloo idəət gü
187. I have not eaten yet.
 idəəgüy
188. I am starving very much.
 gədəs üləsəjiinə
189. Let us cook!
 kooloo/xooloo kiiyəgtii
190. Let us start a fire here.
 ənd galaa asaayi
191. Let us cook rice in the kettle.
 togoond budaa kiigtii
192. What kind of meal do you eat in the daytime?
 üdürt juu idəgčit

193. We eat rice.
cagaan budaa idэгчibid
194. We eat bread.
(1) talx idэгчibid
(2) klyeem/kleem idэгчibid
195. Please sit down!
suucgaagaarэгtii
196. Ok. Let us sit down together.
jaa suucgaayi
197. What kind of drink do you have?
yamar ariki bayna
198. There is vodka.
cagaan ariki bayna
199. How much is there?
kəčineen bayna
200. There are two bottles.
kojor šil bayna
201. Have some more.
dakiad uugaarэгtii
202. I am drunk.
bi sogtjiino
203. I won't drink.
(1) bi uuxagüybi
(2) bi uuxagüy ny
204. I am full.
bür cadbabi

8. Division of the games

205. Hunters came back.
aᅇčid irəə
206. What kind of game did you bring?
juu abčirjiina
207. They brought roe deer and deer.

- boro gürǣs bolon buga bayna
 208. Did you divide the meat?
 maxaa xubaagaat gü
209. No. We have not divided yet.
 kubaagaagüybid/xubaagaagüybid
210. Which part do you want?
 ta juu abxasant
211. Give me some venison.
 bugay makanaasaa nadad jaaxan ügǖnt gü
212. Which part of the meat would you like to have?
 ali xəsə̄gii ny abkat
213. Give me front legs!
 kaagii ny ügǖgtii
214. Is there any meat left?
 maxa üldə̄ gü
215. No, there is no meat left.
 bayxāgǖy bayna
216. Please roast this meat well and give it to me!
 (1) ə̄nə̄ maxayg nadad sayn šar̄j ügǖgtii
 (2) ə̄nə̄ maxayгаа nadad sayn šar̄j ügǖgtii

9. Shopping

217. Come in!
 tabtee morilogtii
218. What do you want?
 juu xayna č̄i (literally ‘What kind of thing are you searching for?’)
219. I will buy a hat and an over coat.
 malgay paltogoo abaxa gə̄j̄iinə̄bi
220. Let me take a look at that black fur hat!
 tər xar üstee malgayg üj̄j̄ǖyi
221. Here you are!
 maagtii

222. Please try on it!
ümsæd üjü dæ
223. It is a little bit small.
jaakan бага байна
224. Do you not have one a little bit bigger?
(1) üünæс tom bayxa gü
(2) üünæс tomo bayxaгүй gü
225. How is this?
әнә yamar байна
226. Yes it is. It is well fitting.
tiim байна sayxan таарајиina
227. What kind of over coats do you have?
yamarkuu paltoonuuд байна
228. Try on this red one!
әнә ulaan paltoog ümsæd үжәрыәgtii
229. I do not like the color.
üngü ny sätgæld taalagdanagүй
230. Let me see that blue overcoat.
тәр күкә paltoog үjүйi
231. Here it is.
jaa әнә байна
232. How is it?
yamaragči байна
233. It fits me very well.
namad jokijiino
234. I like it very much.
sätgæld miny nyæcәjiinә
235. How much is it?
үнү ny kәdii/xәdii
236. It is forty five thousand tugrugs.
dүčin taban myaᅇgan colkoob
237. It is a little bit expensive.
(1) jaaxan ünütee байна
(2) jaaxan üntee байна
238. Do you not have a cheaper one?

- area kimdaxaŋ yüm bayxaġüy ġü
239. How about this brown overcoat then?
tiġbəl ənə kürün/xürün paltoo yamaragči ee
240. This one is cheaper than that one.
ənə činy tərənəəs aray kyamd yüm bayna
241. Oh, it is fine.
ənə tany daġġüy yüm bayna
242. I will take this black fur hat and this brown overcoat.
(1) ənə kara malġayġ kürün paltootee kamtađ ny abagtbı
(2) ənə kara malġayġ kürün paltootee kamtađ ny abayəġtbı
243. How much is it altogether?
bügüd ünü ny kədii be
244. The hat is six thousand tugrugs and the overcoat is thirty thousand tugrugs.
malġay ġurġaan myaŋġan colkoob paltoo ġučin myaŋġan colkoob
245. All together, thirty six thousand tugrugs.
bügüd ġučin ġurġaan myaŋġan colkoob bolġiino
246. Here, take the money!
jaa maagtii
247. Thank you!
jaa bayarlalaa
248. Please come again!
daxiad irəərəġtii

10. Apology

249. I am a little late.
(1) bi jaaxan xoġimdoobi
(2) bi jaaxan xoġimdobobi
250. Sorry for that!
uučlaarəġtii
251. You have not started eating yet because of me.
namaas bolood ođoo xürtəl xool idəġ časaġüy bayġaa biġ čı

252. It does not matter.

(1) жүгээр жүгээр

(2) дајгүү дајгүү

11. Medical treatment

253. How are you doctor?

эмчээ та sayн bayнат гү

254. What is wrong with you?

xaan tany әbgүйркәјиinә (literally ‘Where of your body is not comfortable?’)

255. I feel uncomfortable.

bii miny jaaxan әbgүйркәјиinә (literally ‘My body is not comfortable a little bit.’)

256. Where is aching?

kaan/xaan činy übdüјиinә

257. I have a headache.

tolgoy miny übүsәјиinә (literally ‘My head is aching.’)

258. I feel like I caught a cold.

kaniad xүrsән šig bayna

259. I am sweating.

(1) күлүрј baynabi

(2) күлүрјиinә

260. I have a stomachache

gәdәs miny übүsәјиinә (literally ‘My stomach is aching.’)

261. I have diarrhea.

gәdәs miny güylgәјиinә

262. When did it start?

xәdii tiigәә (‘How long has it been in that way?’)

263. Three days ago.

(1) gurab xonoјиinobi (‘I am passing three days and nights.’)

(2) gurab xonoјиino (‘(I am) passing three days and nights.’)

264. Please take off your outer garment!

gaduur xubtasaa taylәgtii

265. Raise your inner garment!
dotooǰ ərgügtii
266. Raise your arms please!
garaa ərgügtii
267. Stretch your arms!
garaa suŋgagtii
268. Does it ache here?
ənd tany əbdnə gü (literally 'Is here of yours aching?')
269. It does not ache.
əbdnəgüy
270. How is your urine?
šees tany yamar bayna
271. Is it a lot or a little?
ik/ix bayna gü əsbəl бага bayna gü
272. How is your appetite?
koolnee/xoolnee tany duršil yamar
273. I have no appetite.
(1) kool idəx duram ügüy
(2) xool idəx duram ügüy
274. Put on your clothes please!
kubtasaa ümsügtii
275. Let me feel your pulse.
(1) cusnee san coxiltiig üjyəgtbi
(2) sudasnee tan coxiltiig üjyəgtbi
276. What disease is this?
yamar kü übüčün (literally 'What disease do I have?')
277. It's a cold.
kanyaad bayna
278. There is nothing to worry about.
sətkəl/sətgil büü jobayi (literally 'Let us do not worry!')
279. Take this medicine three times a day.
ənə əmiig üdürt gurban udaa uugtii
280. I see.
jaa mədəbəbi
281. Goodbye!

bayartee

12. Season

282. We have a cold wind.
küytən salkitee bayna
283. It was warm just several days ago.
kэдэн коногее үмүн дүлаакан байсан
284. The time flows very fast!
cag ik kurdan үнгүржинэ ээ
285. The day has become shorter recently.
oyrdoo үдүр богношјино
286. Will this winter be as cold as the last winter?
энэ үбүл үнгүрсэн үбүл шиг күйтэн байка болбо гү
287. It also seems that it will snow a lot.
cas bas ix orox oo гү
288. All of us should prepare well for the winter.
bultaraa үбүлее бэлтгэл сайн киикэ кэрэгтее
289. We should look here and there around the house to see if
there is anywhere the draft may come in.
энд тэнд сalkи күүгүжиixэ гajar bayna гү сайн караарэгтii
290. Put on warm clothes please.
dulaaxan kubsлаарэгтii
291. It is easy to catch a cold.
amarxan kaniad xүркөт
292. Be careful with your health!
эрүүл мэндэе ашкаарэгтii

13. Happy event

293. You must be happy about something?
tand bayartee үйл yabadal болбо гү
294. Yes, my younger brother is coming back.

- tiimə ünədür düü miny bucaĵ irkə
 295. Oh, you seem so delighted about that.
 tiigəd l tiim bayar kərtē baysan baynat
296. All of the family members must be happy.
 gəreexən tany бүгүд bayartee bayna bij əə
297. Yes, the whole family is waiting for him.
 tiimə düüg бүгүд l küleeĵiinə
298. When younger brother went, everybody was sad.
 düüg yabaxad бүгүд l gonigloĵiison
299. Especially our mother was very sad.
 yalaŋguyya ĵii many ik gonigloson
300. It is truly great for us to meet again.
 dakiad uuljasanda ik/ix l bayartee baynabid
301. We will have a party at home.
 gərtee bayar kiikəm⁶⁾ ny
302. Have a nice talk with your younger brother.
 düüteegəə sayxan yaricgaagaarəgtii

14. Farewell

303. It is not yet the time for the departure of the train.
 galt tərəg күдүлэхə cag aray boloogüy bij dəə
304. Yes. There are forty minutes left.
 tiimə düčün minuut kərītee üldəd bayna
305. I feel sorry that we are departing so soon like this.
 iigəd yabaxa bolosond karamsaĵiina
306. I feel sorry too.
 bi č bas karamsaltee baynabi
307. Thank you for taking care of me kindly and warmly during
 the past days.

6) The word final /-m/ in #kiikəm# is unexplainable.

- (1) үнгүрсэн кугасаанд элэгсэг дулаакан кандасанд
bayarlalaa
- (2) үнгүрсэн кугасаанд элэгсэг дулаакан карикасанд
bayarlalaa
308. I feel sorry because I was not able to take care of you well.
(1) таниг илүү сайнаар дайлч садаагүйдээ гэмийг хийсэн шиг
baynabi
- (2) таниг илүү сайнаар даyllaa чаддаагүйдээ гэмийг хийсэн шиг
baynabi
309. Please talk to me!
jaabal yariaarəgtii
310. Of course. There is no reason not to do so.
тэгэлгүй дээ
311. I will miss you a lot.
таниг их л санаха байк л
312. I will also miss this place.
(1) би бас эн гэжээг санах байк л
- (2) би эн гэжээг их санах байк л ('I will miss this place very
much.')
313. Have a nice trip!
sayn yabaarəgtii
314. Live well!
sayn сууж байгаарыгтээ

15. Needlework

315. Who made these clothes?
энэ кубтасииг/хубтасииг кэн ойсон
316. My grandmother made them.
minyee əmbəə ойсон
317. What a beautifully made piece of clothing it is!
ик уран үүм байна
318. Our grandmother is very excellent at needle work.
manay əmbəə үйлэнд маши уран нь дээ

319. Then did you learn needle work from your grandmother?
tiigbəl ta əmbəgəəsəə üyl utas sursant gü
320. I learn from my grandmother when I have time.
jab jaygaaraa sursanbi
321. But I am not very good at it.
gəbči sayn xiiĵ čadagči ügüy
322. What are you sewing recently?
oyrdaa⁷⁾ yuu oyjiinot
323. I am sewing a small pouch.
ĵijikən kabtaga oyjiinobi

16. Taste for tea

324. Would you like to have something to drink?
uuxa yüm ügügtbi ('Let me give you something to drink.')
325. Oh, thank you!
jaa bayarlalaa
326. What would you like to drink?
yamar undaa uuxat
327. I want to have some tea.
bi cay uusuy[ø:suj]
328. How do you like it?
bi yaaĵ xiixəbi
329. Would you like to have strong tea?
ütgün kiixə üü⁸⁾
330. Make it weak for me.
šingəxən kiij ügügtii
331. Would you like to have it with milk?
süü xiixəbi gü
332. Mix a little bit of cow milk for me.
süü бага kiigtii/xiigtii

7) More expected form is #oyrdoo#.

8) It is more like a Khalkha form.

333. How about adding some sugar?

saaxar yaakat/yaaxat

334. No sugar thanks!

saaxar büü kii

335. Here you are!

jaa maagtii

336. 'Thank you!'

bayarlababi

17. Hobby

337. What do you like to do when you have time?

čүүлэ cagaaraa yuu xiidəgt

338. I climb mountains.

uuland garagčibi

339. What do you like to do?

ta yuu xiidəgt

340. I like to sing.

(1) bi duu duulaxa durteebi

(2) bi duulaxa durteebi

341. What kind of songs do you like?

yamar duund durteet

342. I like the Altayn Magtaal.

altayn magtaald/magtuuld durtee l bi dəə

343. I like that song too.

bi č bas tər duund durtee agčibi ('I am also the one who likes that song.')

344. It has a really delightful melody.

ünükəər coglog ayilguu šüü

345. Shall we sing together?

kamtdaa/xamtdaa duulaxamana gü

Appendix 3

Data for Grammatical Analysis

1. Nominals and case marking

1.1 Personal pronouns

(1) First person plural exclusive/inclusive

1. We will go to the river. You go to the mountain.

(1) bidnuus golurruu yabana karin tanuus uuluruu yabaarəgtii

(2) bid golurruu yabana xarin tanuus uuluruu yabaarəgtii

2. Let us go to the forest together.

bid бүгүдээрээ xamtdaa oyruu yabyəgtii

(2) Personal pronoun, singular

3. He/She left with me.

tər namatee xamt yabasan

4. I gave him/her this book.

bi tüünd ənə nomiig ügüsənbi

5. He/She gave this book to me.

tər nadad ənə nomiig ügüsən

6. I like you.

(1) bii čamad xayrteebi

(2) či namad talaagdažiinači

7. You like him more.

či tüünd ilüü saynči

8. He/She left with you.

tər čamtee kamt/xamt yabasan

(3) Personal pronoun, plural

9. They left with us.

təd bidəntee xamt yabasan

10. We gave this book to them.

bid tədənd ənə nomiig ügüsən

11. They gave this book to us.

təd bidənd ənə nomiig ügüsən

12. We welcome you warmly.

bid tanariig kaluunaar ugtaxabid

13. You are better with them.

tanar tədədtee ilüü dotont

14. They left with you.

təd tanartee xamt yabasan

(4) Declension of the personal pronoun

15. My book.

minyee nom

16. Do not beat me!

namayg bitgii jodooryəgtii

17. Write a letter to me.

namad jakia bičəree

18. He got great help from me.

(1) tər namaas ik tuslamji absan

(2) tər nadaar ik tusluulsan ('He/She let me help him/her very much.')

19. By me. (Singular, instrumental)

namaar

20. Let you and me go together.

koyuulaa/xoyuulaa kamt yabyəgtii

21. Send me a postcard.

namad il jakidal yabuulaaree

22. Your book. (Singular)
činyee/činee nomo
23. I will not beat you.
bi čamayгаа jодоxогүйbi
24. I will write a letter to you.
bi čamad jakia bičikəbi/bičixəbi
25. I got a great help from you. (Singular)
bi čamaas ik tuslamji absanbi
26. By you. (Singular, instrumental)
čamaar
27. I will go with you.
bi čamtee xamt yabaxabi
28. I will send a postcard to you.
bi čamuruu il jakidal yabuulkabi
29. His/Her book.
tүүнее nom
30. Do not beat him/her.
tərəniig bitgii jодоoree
31. Write a letter to him.
tərənd jakia bičičiəree
32. I got great help from him.
bi tərənəəs ik tuslamji absanbi
33. By him/her. (Instrumental)
tərənəər
34. I will go with him/her.
bi tərəntee xamt yabaxabi
35. Send him/her a postcard.
tərənd il jakidal yabuulaaree
36. Our book.
(1) bidnii nom
(2) manaree nom
37. Do not beat us.
bidniig bitgii jодоoree
38. Write a letter to us.
manart jaxia bičičiəryəgtii

39. He got great help from us.
tər bidənəəs ix tuslamji absan
40. By us. (Instrumental)
manuusaar
41. Let us go with you.
manuustee xamt yabaaree
42. Send us a postcard.
bidənuruu il jakidal yabuulaarəgtii
43. Your book. (Plural)
tanaree nom
44. We will not beat you.
manuus tanariig jodoxogüybid
45. We will write a letter to you.
manuus tanart jakia bičikəbid
46. We got great help from you. (Plural)
manuus tanaraas ik tuslamji absanbid
47. By you. (Plural, instrumental)
tanaraar[t^ha:nəwə:r]
48. We will go with you. (Plural)
manuus tanartee xamt yabaxabid
49. We will send you a postcard. (Plural)
manuus tanarluu il jakidal yabuulkabid
50. His/Her book
tərənee nom
51. Do not beat them.
tədədiig bitgii jodooryəgtii
52. Send them a letter.
tədəd jakia yabuulaaryəgtii/yabuulaaregtii
53. We got great help from them.
(1) manuus tədədəəs ix tuslamji absanbid
(2) tədədə bidənd ik tuslasan (literally 'They helped us a lot.')
54. By them. (Instrumental)
tədənəər
55. We will go with them.
manuus tədtee xamt yabaxabid

56. Send them a postcard.
tədəd il jakidal/jaxidal yabuulaaryəgtii

(5) The genitive case of the personal pronouns

57. My mother is a teacher.
mini ijii bagš

58. Our mother is a teacher.
(1) manaree ijii bagš
(2) manuusee ijii bagš

59. Your mother is a teacher. (Singular)
činii ijii bagš

60. Your mother is a teacher. (Plural)
tanuusee ijii bagš

61. His mother is a teacher.
tərənee ijii bagš

62. Her mother is a teacher.
tərənee ijii bagš

63. Their mother is a teacher.
tədədee ijii bagš

1.2 Number

1.2.1 Singular and plural forms of the noun

(1) General usage

64. a Chinese
(1) šaŋkay xün
(2) siŋkay kün

65. Chinese (Plural)
(1) šaŋkay kümüüis
(2) saŋkayčuud

66. A Russian (male)
oros kün

67. A Russian (female)

- oros kün
68. Russians
(1) oros künüüd
(2) orosuud
69. a Mongol
moŋgol kün
70. Mongols
(1) moŋgol künüüd
(2) moŋgolonuud
71. A Khamnigan
kamnigaŋ kün
72. Khamnigans
(1) kamnigaŋuud
(2) kamnigaŋ künüüd
73. a man and a woman
nəgə ərəgtee ba nəgə əməgtee
74. men and women
ərəgteečüüd ba əməgteečüüd
75. a pupil and a teacher
suragči ba bağš
76. pupils and teachers
suragčid ba bağšnar
77. a cattle and a horse
ükür ba mori
78. cattle and horses
ükürüüd ba moriduud
79. a flower and a bird
cəcəg ba šibuu
80. flowers and birds
cəcəgnüüd ba šibuunuud
- (2) Quantifier and plural marking
81. two horses
koyor/xoyor mori
82. many countries

olon ulad

83. Our grandfather is one hundred years old.
manuusee kügšee juun nasutee

1.3 Case and case marking

1.3.1 Nominative

(1) General usages

84. I am an honest person.
bi šudraga künbi
85. The horse runs.
mori dabkixa
86. Two people came
xoyor kün irbə

1.3.2 Genitive

(1) General usage

87. The mother of a friend of mine came.
andiin miny ijii irbə
88. My teacher's house is at the center of the village.
bağšiin miny gər tosgonee tübd baygči

(2) Case marking for the subject of the embedded sentence

89. It is a piece of clothing that my mother made.
ənə minyee ijiin oyison kubcas
90. This is a book that I bought.
ənə minyee absan nom

(3) Expressions in genitive case

91. Horse's head
morinee tolgoy
92. Pork

- gakayn myəka (literally 'pig's meat')
93. Dentist
südnee domči ('teeth's doctor')
94. World champion
däləkeen abaraga ('World's champion')
95. Clock's hand, watch's hand
cagee jüü
96. College of teachers
bagšee dæd surguuli
97. Khentii aimag
kəntii/kəntee aymag
98. Breakfast
ügülənee cay[ts^hɛ:] ('morning's tea')
99. Book price
nomee ünə ('book's price')
100. Train time table
galt tərgənee cagee kubaari[k^hɔwɛ:rʲ] (train's time's allotment')
101. Eyeglasses
nüdnee šil ('eye's glasses')
102. Ulaanbaatar city
ulaanbaatar koto/xoto
103. Happy birthday to you!
türsən üdüree bayar kürgii

1.3.3 Accusative

(1) General usages

104. I bought rice from the market.
bi jəəlyəəs cagaan budaa abbabi
105. Mother is waiting for us.
ijii manariig külyeejiinə

(2) Indefinite object

106. Elder brother found money on the street.
akay jam dəərəəs colkoob olloo

107. Children are reading their books at home.

küügüüd gərtəə nomoo uŋšijina[əniçitçiin/ənəçitçiin]

1.3.4 Instrumental

108. We use spoons for eating.

bid xalbagaar idəgčibid (literally ‘We are those who eat with a spoon.’)

109. My father made a table with wood.

aba many modoor nomee širee kiibə

110. We came by horse.

bid morioor irsənbid

111. It snows heavily in Khentii in winter.

kəntee übüldəə cas iktee

112. Mongolia is famous for Gobi.

mongol oron gobioor aldartee

1.3.5 Comitative

113. I went to the forest with my mother.

bi ijiteegəə kamt/xamt oyruu yabababi

114. I read a book with a friend of mine.

bi andateegaa kamt nom uŋšibabi

1.3.6 Dative

115. My father bought me shoes.

abam namad gutal abč ügübə

116. I am telling them an old story.

bi tədəd üligər yarixabi[jerɣǎwɨ]

1.3.7 Locative

(1) Spatial

117. I am the tallest in my village.

- bi tosgondoo xamagay ündür ny bi
 118. He/She is living in Beijing.
 tər bəəjɪŋd amdradag
 119. My child is at school now.
 kүүikүd одоо surguuli дээрээ baygaa

(2) Temporal

120. He/She was sleeping when I came.
 minyee irkəd tər untajūiba
 121. Thank you for your help during my stay in Seoul.
 (1) namaygaa səəbüld[sə:βult] baykad miny tusalsand činy bayarlababi
 (2) səəbüld[sə:βult] bayxad miny namad tuslasand činy bayarlababi

1.3.8 Directional

(1) General usages

122. This car is going to our village.
 ənə mašiin manay tosgonuruu yabaxa
 123. Do you go to the river or sea to catch fishes?
 jagas barikuur/barixaar goluruu yabaxama[jaβχämă]¹⁾ gü dalayruu yabaxama[jaβχämă] gü

(2) Indefinitive direction

124. The dog fled outside
 noxoy gadaqši jutaab[tsɔt^ha:w]²⁾
 125. My wife went somewhere.
 (1) əkənər xaa/kaa nəgə tiišee yabasan
 (2) əkənər kayšaa/xayšaa čī yüm yabačiksan
 (3) Path: Passing point when the action is done

1) The function of the segment /-ma-/ in #yabaxama[jaβχämă]# is unclear.

2) More expected phonetic form is nearer to [tsɔkt^häβä] as the consultant answered [tsɔktäχä] for the word 'to flee, to escape'.

126. I came back by this road.
bi ənə jamaar bucaĭ irbəbi
127. I went to the river along the snow covered road and came back.
bi castee jamaar gol kürtər yabaad bucaĭ irbəbi
128. I crossed the deep water which reached at my waist.
(1) bi bəlxüüs kürsən us gatlaĭ irəəbi
(2) bi bəlxüüs kürsən us gatlaĭ irbəbi

1.3.9 Elative³⁾

(1) Direction from where the action originated

129. Horses came back from the forest.
morid oygoos bucaĭ irbə
130. He fell from the horse.
tər morinoosoo unaba
131. It takes three hours from the lake to the forest.
nuuraas oy kürtər gurban cag yabaxa

1.3.10 Ablative

(1) Starting point, source of the action

132. I came from Ulaanbaatar.
(1) bi ulaanbaataraas irbə
(2) bi ulaanbaataraas irbəbi
133. Gansukh came back from Ulaanbaatar.
gansüx ulaanbaataraas bucaĭ irbə

(2) Cause⁴⁾

134. His father died of an illness.
tərənee aba übüčünəər nas baraba
135. I cried because I was happy.

3) It seems that the difference between the elative and the ablative is not discernable in Khamnigan, at least at the morphological level.

4) Cause is not marked by the ablative case in Khamnigan.

bi bayarlasandaa uyilbabi

(3) Comparison⁵⁾

136. Many people came today.

(1) münəädür kümüüs ik irbə

(2) ünəädür kümüüs ik irbə

137. More people came yesterday than today.

üčügüdüür ünəädürəəs ik kün irbə

138. It seems that the most people will come tomorrow.

margaaši kümüüs xamgay ik irk bayka aa

139. This lake is bigger than that lake.

ənə nuur tər nuuraas ilüü ürgün

140. Elder brother is three years older than younger brother.

akay ny düügəəsəə gurban nasaar⁶⁾ aka

141. Make greater efforts!

ilüü ikəər čarmaygaaree

1.4 Personal possessive and reflexive marking

(1) Personal possessive marking

142. My horse is at home.

minyee mori gərtəə bayna

143. Your horse runs fast.

činii mori kurdan bayna

144. I am a better pupil than his elder brother.

bi tərənee akaas⁷⁾ ilüü sayn suragčibi

145. This child's eyes are very similar to its mother's eyes.

ənə kүүgүнee нүд ијіteeгəə адилкан yüm

5) The ablative case marker is used for the comparison in most of the cases, but not always as we see in sentence 141.

6) Considering such forms as /nasu/ 'age' and /nasutee/ '~years old', its correct phonemic transcription might be /nasaar/.

7) Its correct phonemic transcription may be near to /akaaas/.

146. Our native land is very beautiful.
manaree nutag maši sayxan
147. Where is your school?
tanuusee surguuli kaan/xaan baygči
148. He loves (his own) children very much.
tər küügüüdtə ik xayrtee

(2) Reflexive pronoun

149. I went there for myself.
bi əreɛŋgə[ə:re:ŋgə:]⁸⁾ tülə tiišee očisonbi
150. You went there for yourself.
či əreɛŋgə[ə:rø:gə:] tülə tiišee očisonči
151. He went to that place for himself.
tər əreɛŋgə[ə:re:ŋgə:] tülə tiišee očison
152. We went there for our very selves.
manuus ərsdeɛŋgə[ə:rəsde:ŋgə:]⁹⁾ tülə tiišee očisonbid
153. You went there for yourselves.
tanuud ərsdeɛŋgə[ə:rəsde:ŋgə:] tülə tiišee očisont
154. They went there for themselves.
tədəd ərsdeɛŋgə[ə:rəsde:ŋgə:] tülə tiišee očison

(3) Reflexive possessive marking

155. I finished eating my meal and brushed my teeth.
bi kooloo idəd sudə/šüdə ugaababi
156. I miss my wife.
bi əkənərəə sanaj baynabi
157. I wrote a letter to my wife.
(1) bi əxnərtəə jakia bičibəbi
(2) bi əkənərtəə jakia bičibəbi
158. I made my wife write a letter.
bi əkənərərəə jakia bičiiülbəbi

8) It is basically the same as the Buryat form /өөрyнгөө/ 'one's own'.

9) Unlike the singular form, it is a kind of mixture of Khalkha (өөрсдийнхөө and Buryat (өөхэдынгөө).

159. I received a letter from my wife.
bi əkənərəsəə jakia abbabi
160. I read a letter with my wife.
bi əkənərteegəə kamt jakia uŋʃiaabi
161. I went to the market on my way home.
(1) gərtəə bucaxa jamdaa jəəlyəər yabaabi
(2) bi gərtəə bucaxa jamdaa jəəlyəər yabababi

1.5 Postposition

162. It snowed from morning to evening.
ügülənənəs oroy boltol cas orobo
163. I fought for my country.
bi əkə[ik^h] oroneŋgoo tüləə tulaldaabi
164. He is sleeping on the lawn.
tər jüülgən dər untajiina
165. I read a letter with my wife.
bi əkənərteegaa xamt jakia uŋʃibabi
166. I am as happy as you.
bi cam ʃig aj ʃargaltee baynabi (literally 'I am happy like you.')
167. I am happy because of you.
či baygaa axad činy bi aj ʃargaltee baynabi
168. I go hunting everyday.
bi üdür бүкүн abad yabagčibi
169. Nobody knows except me.
namaas əər kən č mädəkəgüy
170. Mother came after father had left.
(1) aba yabasaneə daraa ijii irbə
(2) aba yabasaneə daraakan ijii irbə
(3) aba yabasan koyno[k^hɔjn] ijii irbə
171. According to the news, it snowed much in Ulaanbaatar.
mädənənəs soŋsbol miny ulaanbaatart cas ik/ix oroʃee
172. I saw no one on the way back home.

- gərtəə bucaxa jamdaa kəntee č taraabagüybi
173. Go before the rain starts.
boroο orokoos ümün yaba[jawǎ]
174. Go after the rain stops.
boroο namasxaar yaba[jawǎ]
175. We stayed at home because it rained.
boroο orson akad ny bid gərtəə baybabid[pejppit]
176. Come back within three hours.
gurban cagee dotor bucaǰ ir
177. I read a book from two o'clock to three o'clock.
xoyor cagaas gurban cag xürtür bi nom uñšibabi
178. How many hours does it take from here to Undurkhaan by car?
əndəəs ündürxaan kürtür mašinaar kədən cag yabagči ny
179. Gansukh reads many books in order to go to college.
(1) gansüx ik surguulid orox gəǰ ik nom uñšigči
(2) gansüx ik surguulid orox gəǰ nom ik uñšigči
180. Gansukh talks about Korea often.
gansük[kanşük/kansük] solongosee tuxay dandaa yarigči
181. Gansukh goes to school via the forest.
gansük oyg üngürün surguulidaa yabagči
182. Gansukh walked along the river.
gansüx golee daguu alkaba
183. It is difficult to commute to Undurkhaan without a car.
mašiin ügüy bolkoor ündürkaan kürtər/kürtəl aǰild yabxad
kəjuu bayna
184. School is considerably far from the forest.
surguuli oygoos nileen jaytee agči
185. Gansukh knows two more languages besides Mongolian and Russian.
gansük oros kəl moŋgol kələnəəs əər koyor kəl mädəgči
(‘Gansukh is someone who knows two more languages
besides Mongolian and Russian.’)
186. According to the weather forecast, we will have heavy snow
today.
(1) cag agaaree uridčilan sərgiiləxə mädəəgəər bol ünəədür

ik cas orox oo

(2) cag agaaree uridčilan sərgiiləkə mədəəgəər abal ünəədür

ik cas orox oo

187. I walked past the school.

bi surguuliee xajuugaar alkaḯ üngürbəbi

188. Gansukh is only a young pupil.

(1) gansüx bicigan suragčias caasgüy

(2) gansüx bicixan suragčias caašigüy

189. Gansukh went there instead of me.

gansük minyee orond tənd očibo

2. Grammar of the verbals (1): Conjugational suffixes

2.1 Indicative mood

2.1.1 Present tense

(1) Singular

190. I smoked.¹⁰⁾

bi tamix tatababi

191. You smoke

či tamix tatagči ('You are a smoker.')

192. He/She smokes

tər tamix tataka

(2) Plural

193. We smoke together.

manuus kamt/xamt tamix tatababid

10) Our question was prepared to induce the present tense. However, we failed to make our consultant understand what we were expecting from her.

194. We smoke but you do not.
bid tamix tatabči tanuus tamix tataxagüyt
195. You smoke.
tanuud tamix tataxat
196. They smoke.
tədəd tamix tatana

2.1.2 Past tense

(1) Singular

197. I went to school yesterday.
bi üčügüdür surguulidaa yabasanbi
198. You went to school yesterday.
či üčügüdür surguulidaa yabasanči
199. He/She went to school yesterday.
tər üčügüdür surguulidaa yabasan

(2) Plural

200. We went to school together yesterday.
manuus üčügüdür kamt surguulidaa yabasanbid
201. We read books and you drew pictures yesterday.
bidnuus üčügüdür nom uŋšij tanuus üčügüdür jurag jursant
202. You went to school yesterday.
(1) tanuus üčügüdür surguulidaa yabasant
(2) canuus¹¹⁾ üčügüdür surguulidaa¹²⁾ yabasant
203. They went to school yesterday.
tədəd üčügüdür surguulidaa yabasan

(3) Various past tense marking

204. I was born in Ulaanbaatar.
bi ulaanbaatar türsünbi
205. He/She was born in Ulaanbaatar.

11) It seems to be a simple mistake of /tanuus/.

12) It seems to be a simple mistake of /surguulidaa/.

tər ulaanbaatar tūrübə

206. I came from Ulaanbaatar yesterday.

bi üčügüdüр ulaanbaataras irəəbi

207. I lived in Ulaanbaatar ten years ago.

(1) bi araban jilee ümün ulaanbaatar amdraј baysanbi

(2) bi araban jilee ümün ulaanbaatar amdraјiisanbi

208. It was raining yesterday.

üčügüdüр boroo oroјiison

209. Rain has just stopped.

boroo дүггји say jogsobo

210. Thank you for your help.

tuslamји үжүүлсэнд bayarlababi

211. I have studied Mongolian for ten years.

bi мөңгол кэл araban јил surbabi

212. I have heard a lot about you.

tanii/tanee tukay ik sonsoobi

213. Once upon a time, there lived an old man and an old woman in a village.

əртəə urideen cagt нэгэ tosgond əmbəə үбүгүн koyor
amdraјijee

2.1.3 Future tense

(1) Singular

214. I will go to school tomorrow.

bi margaaši surguulidaa yabaxabi

215. You will go to school tomorrow.

či margaaši surguulidaa yabakači/yabaxači

216. He/She will go to school tomorrow.

tər margaaši surguulidaa yabaxa

(2) Plural

217. Tomorrow, we will go to school together.

manuus margaaši surguulidaa kamt yabakabid

218. Tomorrow, we will go to school and you will stay at home.

- manuus margaaši surguulidaa yabaĵ karin tanar gərtəə bayxat
 219. You will go to school tomorrow.
 tanar margaaši surguulidaa yabaxat
 220. They will go to school tomorrow.
 tədəəd margaaši surguulidaa yabaka

2.2 Intentional mood

221. I will go there.
 tənd bi očixobi
 222. We will go there.
 tənd/tənd¹³⁾ manaar očiyi

2.3 Imperative mood

(1) Typical imperative

223. Go back home now!
 odookon gərtəə oči
 224. Please go back home now!
 odoo gərtəə oči
 225. All of you go back home now!
 odoo bügüdəərəə gərtəə očigtii

(2) Special imperative delayed command

226. Go tomorrow or the day after tomorrow!
 margaaši č yüm gü nügədər yabaarəgtii
 227. Do visit my home another time!
 daraa manayd dakiad irəərəgtii (literally 'Come again at my home later!')

13) One of those Khalkha forms that occasionally appear in the speech of our consultant.

(3) Special imperative for the third person

228. Let him go back home!

tərəniig gərt ny yabuul

229. Let them go back home!

tədəədiig gərt ny yabuul

(4) Special imperative for wish, hope

230. May all of your business be fulfilled!

sanasan[sansāŋ] бүкүн таны сэтгэлчилэн[sətʰgəptɕiləm] бүтэхэ
boltugay

231. Please forgive me!

uučlaaree

232. Cheers for our nation!

manay ulus mandatugay ny (literally 'Let our country rise!')

(5) Persuading mood

233. Let us go together!

kamt yabaxamana gü

234. Let us read a book together!

kamt nom унšixamana gü

2.4 Verbal noun suffixes

(1) Nominal clause

235. I heard that you came here yesterday.

bi үүгүдүр танииг әнд ирсәнииг ny сонсооби

236. I am very glad that you came here.

bi танииг әнд ирсәнд таны байарлај baynabi

237. Eating too much sugar is very bad for the health.

čikər ik idəxə ny әрүүл мәндәд ik muu

(2) Attributive clause

238. I heard the news that he had come back.

tər bucaј irəә gəј сонсооби

239. I read a book that I bought yesterday.
 bi ücügüdüür absan nomoo uñşibabi
240. No pupil ever knows this.
 ənəniig mədəxə suragči nəgə či bayxagüy
241. I bought a book to read.
 bi uñşixa nomoo abaabi
242. Textbook
 surka bičig ('a learning book' or 'a book to learn')

2.5 Connective suffixes

2.5.1 Simultaneous relation

(1) Two actions happen in parallel

243. We talked while laughing.
 (1) bid ineej yaribabid
 (2) manus ineej yariaabid
244. Children ran into the room.
 küügüüd ürəndəə güyj orobo

(2) Two clauses have different subjects

245. Mother is eating fish, on the other hand, father is eating mutton.
 ijii jagas idjiinə karin aba koninee myaka/maxa idjiinə
246. Gansukh was singing and Saraa was dancing.
 gansüx duu duulañiiñ saraa büjigləbə
247. Gansukh sang. On the other hand, Saraa danced.
 gansüx duu duulaba xarin saraa büjig büjigləbə

2.5.2 Successive connection

(1) Actions happen successively

248. I ate breakfast and went to school.
 (1) bi ügülnəegəə cayg uugaad surguulidaa yabababi
 (2) bi ügülnəegəə cay uugaad surguulidaa yabababi

249. Yesterday, I bought a book and came back home.

üčügüdür bi nom abaad gärtəə irbəbi

250. Gansukh sung then danced.

gansüx duulaĵiigaad büjigləbə (literally 'Gansukh was singing then danced.')

251. Gansukh sang. Then he danced.

gansüx duu duulaba tiigəəd büjig büjigləbə

2.5.3 Conditional connection

(1) Anterior clause expresses condition or assumption

252. If you go, I will go too.

ta yabbal tany bi či bas yabakabi

253. If you learn well, you will be praised.

ta sayn suraasee magtagdaxat

254. If they want to come, let them come.

təd ənd irəxiig xüsəəsee irəg

2.5.4 Opportunity connection

(1) Doing one action while the other is being done

255. Let us go hunting when we go mountain climbing.

uuland abirasaneexiig abag xiyyi

256. I would like to drop by your house when I go to that village.

tər tosgond očisoneexiig tanayxaar bas orogtbi

2.5.5 Concessive connection

257. Although Gansukh sang, Saraa did not.

(1) gansüx duu duulasan bolobči saraa duulabagüy

(2) gansüx duulasan bolobči saraa duulabagüy

258. Gansukh sang. But Saraa did not.

gansüx duu duulaba saraa duulabagüy

2.5.6 Cause and effect connection

259. Tsetsegmaa being a Khamnigan sings Khamnigan songs well.
 cəcəgmaa kamnigaŋ kün akadaa kamnigaŋ duu goyi duulagči
 ('Tsetsegmaa being a Khamnigan, she is a person who sings
 Khamnigan song well.')
260. Tsetsegmaa is a Khamnigan. Thus she sings Khamnigan song
 well.
 cəcəgmaa kamnigaŋ kün tiiməəs kamnigaŋ duu goyi duulagči
 ('Tsetsegmaa is a Khamnigan. Thus she is a person who sings
 Khamnigan song well.')
261. Tsetsegmaa sings Khamnigan song well. The reason being
 because she is a Khamnigan.
 cəcəgmaa kamnigaŋ duu goyi duulagči yagaad gəbəl tər
 kamnigaŋ kün ('Tsetsegmaa is a person who sings Khamnigan
 song well. The reason is she is a Khamnigan.')

2.5.7 Selective connection

262. Tsetsegmaa either sings or dances at night.
 (1) cəcəgmaa/cecegmaa šun boloxoor duu duulax yüm üü
 büjig büjigləgči ('Tsetsegmaa is a person who either sings
 or dances at nights.')
- (2) cecegmaa šun boloxoor duu duulax yüm üü büjigləgči

3. Grammar of the verbals (2): Derivational suffixes

3.1 Causative voice¹⁴⁾

263. I brought water.

bi us abčiraabi

264. My mother let me bring water.

ijii namaar us abčiruulaba

265. I butchered a chicken.

bi nэгə takia gargaabi

266. I made my younger brother butcher a chicken.

bi dүүгэрэə nэгə takia garguulababi

267. My younger brother went to school.

minyee dүү surguulidaa očibo

268. My mother made my younger brother go to school.

ijii dүү surguulid ny yabuulaba

3.2 Passive voice¹⁵⁾

269. A hunter caught a rabbit.

aңчин туулай абалaba

270. A rabbit was caught by a hunter.

туулай аңчинд баригдaba

271. I heard a bell sound.

bi koңkonee duu soңsoobi

272. From far away, a bell sound was heard.

alasad koңkonee duu soңsogdaba

273. His/Her father built a new house last year.

14) In 267 and 268, different verbs were used for the active (oči- 'to go') and the causative (yabuula- 'to let go') voices.

15) In 269 and 270, different verbs were used for the active (abala- 'to hunt') and the causative (barigda- 'to be caught') voices.

- tərənēe aab nodnyoŋ jil šin gərəə bariba
 274. This is a house which was built last year by my father.
 ənə nodnyoŋ abaiin/abae¹⁶⁾ bariuulasan gər

3.3 Reflexive voice¹⁷⁾

275. My mother did the washing.
 ijii ugaalaga kiibə
 276. I swam in the river.
 bi golee usand orobobi
 277. He hid my book.
 tər minyee[mijne:] nomiig nuugaa
 278. He hid himself behind the door.
 tər kaalganee caaguur/caagtur¹⁸⁾ nuugdajjiina

3.4 Reciprocal voice

279. My mother and my father are talking to each other.
 ijii aba xoyor yarilcajjiina
 280. Two people fight.
 xoyor xün üjəlcəjjiinə

3.5 Associative voice¹⁹⁾

281. Two of us beat that person.
 bid xoyor tərəniig jodoobid

16) Two different genitive markers /-iin/ and /-ee/ are employed for the same word /aba/ 'father' here.

17) No special devices are employed for the reflexive voice marking.

18) /-t-/ in /caagtur/ is unexplicable.

19) No associative marker is used in the verbs.

282. I built a house with my own younger brother.

bi düüteegəə kamt gərəə bariaabi

283. I am studying at school together with my friend.

bi surguuli dər andateegaa kamt nom uṅšigčibi (literally ‘I am one who reads books with my own friend.’)

3.6 Progressive aspect

284. It snows now.²⁰⁾

odoo cas orobo (‘It snowed now.’)

285. I am eating meal now.

odoo bi kooloo/xooloo idiṅiinəbi

286. He is eating meal now.

tər/ter odoo kooloo idṅiinə

3.7 Repetitive aspect²¹⁾

287. I am reading book.

bi nom uṅšijjinabi

288. I am reading this book again and again.

(1) bi enə nomiig dabant uṅšijjinabi

(2) ənə nomiig bi dabant uṅšijjinabi

3.8 Presumption

289. He is reading a book now.

tər odoo nom uṅšijjina

290. It seems that he is reading a book.

20) It is apparent that we were not successful to make our consultant understand our intention.

21) Repetitive aspect is not marked on the verb.

tər odoo nom uŋšij̄ bayгаа bij

291. It seems that it will rain anyway.

yamar ċi asee boroo oroko ny

292. Father beats his child.

aba ny küünəə jančiba

293. It seems that father is beating his child.

aba ny küügəə jodoj̄ bayigaa šig bayna

3.9 Intention

294. He came to the village to see his friend.

tər andateegaa uuljaxaaar tosgond irbə

295. I went to a shop to buy liquor.

bi aagintad ariki abkaaar/abxaaar očoobi

4. Copula

4.1 Present

296. Tsetsegmaa is a teacher.

cəcəgmaa/səcəgmaa bol bagš

4.2 Past

297. Tsetsegmaa was a teacher.

cəcəgmaa/səcəgmaa bagš baysan

5. Usages of the auxiliary verbal constructions

5.1 'to exist/to be'

(1) As a main verb

298. I am at home.

bi gərtəə baynabi

299. He has a son.

tərənd kübüün bi

(2) Progressive aspect: present

300. I am reading a book now.

bi odoo nom u᠋ᠰᠢᠵᠢᠶᠢᠨabi

301. You are reading a book.

či odoo nom u᠋ᠰᠢᠵᠢᠶᠢᠨači

302. He is reading a book now.

tər odoo nom u᠋ᠰᠢᠵᠢᠶᠢᠨa

(3) Progressive aspect: past

303. When father came back, I was reading a book.

abaiig irxəd ny nom u᠋ᠰᠢᠵᠢᠶᠢᠨsanbi

304. When father came back, you were reading a book.

abiig irxəd ny či nom u᠋ᠰᠢᠵᠢᠶᠢᠨsanči

305. When father came back, his son was reading a book.

aba ny irxəd ny kübüün ny nom u᠋ᠰᠢᠵᠢᠶᠢᠨsan

(4) Progressive aspect: future

306. I may be reading a book at school tomorrow.

bi margaaši surguuli dээрэе nom u᠋ᠰᠢᠵᠢᠶᠢᠨ bayxabi

307. You may be reading a book at school tomorrow.

či margaaši[margaasi] surguuli dээрэе nom u᠋ᠰᠢᠵᠢᠶᠢᠨ bayxači

308. Will he/she be reading a book at school tomorrow?

tər margaaši[margaasi] surguuli dээрэе nom u᠋ᠰᠢᠵᠢᠶᠢᠨ bayxa gü

(5) Continuative aspect

309. You are wearing a hat.

či malagay ümsjiinači

310. My father already came back home.

aba ny kədiin gərtəə irəə

5.2 'to become'

(1) As a main verb

311. I became a student last year.

bi nodnyoŋ oyuutan bolloobi

(2) Permission

312. You may smoke here.

ənd tamix tataj bolko

313. You may leave now.

či odoo yabajii²²⁾ ('You are leaving now!')

(3) Immediateness

314. It just started to rain.

boroo sayi orojiino

315. He just left for school a moment ago.

tər surguuliuruu dūŋgüj sayi yababa

5.3 'to receive'

(1) As a main verb

316. I received a present from my father.

bi abaaasaa bələg abaabi

22) It seems to be an abridged form of /yabaj bay-/, and the whole sentence sounds more like an imperative sentence.

(2) Benefit

317. I bought new clothes for myself.

bi əərtəə ſin xubtas/xubcas abaabi

318. I adopted that child as my own.

bi əərtəə tər küügiig ürgəḯ abaabi

319. I studied the Mongolian language for myself.

bi əəreenḡəə tüləə monḡol kəl/xel sursanbi

320. I studied the Khamnigan language for myself.

bi əəreenḡəə tüləə kamniḡaḡ kəl sursanbi

5.4 'to give'

(1) As a main verb

321. Teacher gave me a book.

baḡṣ namad nəḡə nom üḡəə

322. My father gave me a good present.

aba namad goyi bələḡ üḡübə

(2) Benefit

323. I spoke about my village to my teacher.

bi baḡṣ(i)daa tosgoneegoo tuxay yariḯ üḡəəbi

324. I read a book for my mother.

bi iḯiidəə nom uḡṣiḯ üḡəəbi

325. Mother sang a nursery rhyme to her child.

iḯii xüüḡündəə büübeyn duu ayilaba

5.5 'to see'

(1) As a main verb

326. I saw fish in the river.

bi gold jaraaxay xarbabi

(2) Try

327. Try the new clothes on!

šin xubtasaa nэгə ümsəəd üjəree l či

328. I brought pastry. Taste!

јignəməg abaad irbəbi amsaad üjəree (literally 'I bought and brought pastry. Taste!')

5.6 'to be able to'

329. I can read.

bi nom uнšij čadaxabi (literally 'I can read books.')

330. He can read.

tər nom uнšij čadaxa (literally 'He can read books.')

331. He can not read.

tər nom uнšij čadaxagüy (literally 'He can not read books.')

5.7 'to have to do'

332. I have to leave today.

bi münəədür/ünəədür yabaxasanbi

333. You are to read through this book within three days!

(1) či gurban üdüree dotor ənə nomiig бүгүдii ny uнšij duusgaxači

(2) či ənə nomiig gurban üdüree dotor бүгүдii ny uнšij duusgaxači

6. Negative sentence, interrogative sentence, quotations

6.1 Nominal negation

334. I was a pupil.
bi suragči asanbi
335. I am not a pupil.
bi suragči bišibi
336. I was not a student at that time.
bi tər üyd suragči biši baysanbi
337. He is an adult.
(1) tər tomo kün
(2) tər nasu bəjənd kürsən kün
338. He is not an adult.
tər tomo kün biši
339. (He/She) was not an adult yet at that time.
tər üyd karaakan tomo kün biši bayba

6.2 Adjectival negation

340. That child is pretty.
tər küüg kærkən yüm altay dəə ('That child is apparently pretty.')
341. That child is not pretty.
tər küüg kærkən biš
342. That child was not pretty at that time.
(1) tər üyd tər küüg xaraaxan kærkən biš baysan
(2) tər küüg tər üyd xaraaxan kærkən biš baysan

6.3 Verbal negation

6.3.1 Present

(1) Simple negation

343. I do not go to school today.

bi münəädür/ünəädür surguulidaa yabaxagüybi

344. You do not go to school today.

či münəädür/ünəädür surguulidaa yabaxagüyči

345. He/She does not go to school today.

tər münəädür surguulid yabaxagüy

346. He/She has no money.

tərənd colkoob bayxagüy

(2) Negation of ability

347. I can not go to school now.

bi odoo surguulid yabaĵ čadaxagüybi

348. You can not go to school now.

či odoo surguulid yabaĵ čadaxagüyči

349. He/She can not go to school now.

tər odoo surguulid yabaĵ čadaxagüy

6.3.2 Past

(1) Simple negation

350. I did not go to school yesterday.

bi üčügüdür surguulidaa očoogüybi

351. You did not go to school yesterday.

či üčügüdür surguulidaa očoogüy altay či dəə

352. He/She did not go to school yesterday.

(1) tər üčügüdür surguulidaa očibogüy

(2) tər üčügüdür surguulidaa očobo ügüy

353. He/She had no money.

tərənd colkoob baybagüy

(2) Negation of ability

354. I was not able to go to school yesterday.
bi үчүгүдүр сургуулдаа оңй чадбагыби
355. You were not able to go to school yesterday.
чи үчүгүдүр сургуулдаа оңй чадбагычи
356. He/She was not able to go to school yesterday.
төр үчүгүдүр сургуулдаа оңй чадбагы

6.4 Negative imperative

357. Do not wear those clothes!
төр кубcasaa/xubcasaa бүү үмүс (literally 'Do not wear that clothes!)
358. Do not eat that apple!
төр алимииг бүү ид
359. Do not touch with your hand!
гар бүү күрүлчи
360. No entry to unauthorized persons! ('(They) prohibited outsider from coming in.')
- gadnee күн ороxiиг xoriglobo
361. No smoking!
(1) tamix tataxiig xoribo (literally '(We) prohibited (you from) smoking.')
- (2) tamix бүү татаgtii (literally 'Do not smoke please.')

6.5 Negative polarities

362. He/She can not speak Mongolian at all.
төр yүрәсәә монголор yariҗ чадaxaгыү
363. He/She will never go there again.
төр yaasan č tәnd dakin oči xoгыү axuu

6.6 Interrogative sentences

(1) Yes-No questions

364. Are you a pupil?

či suragčiči gü

365. Is he a teacher?

tər bagš gü

366. Did you go to school yesterday?

či üčügüdür surguulidaa yabasanči gü

367. Did your grandmother come from Russia or China?

(1) əmbəə oroosoos irbə či gü əsbəl k yatadaas irbə či gü²³⁾

(2) əmbəə oroosoos irəə gü šaŋkaygaas irəə gü

(2) WH question

368. Who are you?

či kən či

369. Who is he?

tər kən

370. When did you come here?

či kəjəə ənd irəəči

371. How many houses are there in this village?

ənə tosgond xədən ayl baygči ny

372. Where did grandfather come from?

kügšee xaanaas irbə

373. You did not go to school yesterday, did you?

(1) či üčügüdür surguulidaa yabaagüy bij či

(2) či üčügüdür surguulidaa yabaagüy altay či dəə

374. Oh, I did not go.

tiiməə yababagüybi

375. Oh, I did go.

(1) ügüy yablaa l

(2) ügüy yablaa ny

23) The /či/ appears two times in this sentence, but its role is unexplainable.

6.7 Quotation

376. I asked, “Did father come?”
bi aba irəə gəʃ asuugaabi
377. I asked mother if father had come.
bi ijiiḡəsəə aba irbə gəʃ asuugaabi
378. Mother said father had not come yet.
ijii aabiḡ²⁴⁾ irəəḡüy bayna gəʃ kəlləə
379. I thought, “It would have been nice if father came.”
bi aab irbəl yamar goyi be gəʃ bodobobi
380. I thought it would have been nice if father had come.
bi aabiḡ irbəl goyi axaa gəʃ bodobobi

7. Special sentences

381. Gansukh sings in Monolian or Russian.
gansük moḡḡol oroḡoor duulagči
382. If Gansukh sings, Saraa dances.
kərbəə/xərbəə gansük duulabal saraa büjḡḡlḡgči
383. If Tsetsegmaa starts singing, she sings until she finishes.
cəcəḡmaa nəḡənt duu duulaj ikləə aasee duustal ny duulagči
384. Although Tsetsegmaa is poor, she is happy.
(1) cəcəḡmaa kədee yaduu č aasee ḡargaltee bayḡči
(2) səcəḡmaa kədee yaduu aasee ḡargaltee bayḡči
385. If you start singing, sing until you finish.
nəḡənt duu duulaj ikləsən aasee duustal ny duula
386. Sing a song. Or dance a dance.
duu duula əsbəl büjḡḡ büjḡḡlḡ

24) In sentences 378-380, the word for ‘father’ is the Khalkha form. See Buryat аба (father, nominative), абыг (father, accusative) and Khalkha аав (father, nominative), аавыг (father, accusative).

References

- Seoul National University서울대학교인문대학언어학과 (제작), Altai Real Project 팀 (수정), (2007. 6. 15. 몽골어판 제4판), 《언어조사질문지 (몽골지역용)》, 한국학술진흥재단 (후원), 한국알타이학회.
- YU유원수 (2003), <다고르어 치치하르 머일스 하위 방언의 기초 어휘의 구성>, 《한국알타이학회 2003년 학술논문집》, 27-48, 한국알타이학회.
- YU유원수 (2004a), 《몽골미사》, 사계절, 서울.
- YU유원수 (2004b), <타칭 지역 아실 다오르 방언의 모습>, 《2004年度 秋季學術大會 發表要旨》, 1-12, 中央아시아學會.
- YU유원수 (2007a), <서부 부리아트 방언들의 모습>, 《2007 춘계학술발표대회 논문집》, 1-12, 중앙아시아학회.
- YU유원수 (2007b), <다르하드 방언 소고>, 《몽골학》 23, 5-28, 한국몽골학회.
- YU유원수 (2008a), <저항력 없는 어휘: 절멸 위기의 알타이 언어들에 대한 현지 조사 결과를 중심으로>, 《몽골학》 25, 47-69, 한국몽골학회.
- YU유원수 (2008b), <다고르어 타칭 방언의 어휘 구성>, 《2008年度 秋季學術大會 - 중앙아시아 문화의 동서 교류-》, 1-12, 사단법인 중앙아시아학회.
- YU유원수 (2009b), <절멸위기의 몽골어계 언어들에 대한 한국학자들의 현지 조사연구>, 《2009 Korea-Mongolia International Conference》, 77-92, Ulaanbaatar: Mongolian Academy of Sciences, Northeast Asian History Foundation.
- YU유원수 (2009c), 《몽골의 언어와 문화》, 서울: 소나무.
- YU유원수 (2010a), <몽골의 몽골 합니강 소고: 음운적 특징을 중심으로>, 《중앙아시아학회 추계발표회》, 1-16, 중앙아시아학회.
- 白音門德 (2004), “布里亞特語語音聲學分析,” *Proceedings of the 6th Seoul International Altaic Conference: Researches on Endangered Altaic Languages*, 129-138, The Altaic Society of Korea.
- Doerfer, Gerhard (1985), “Das Kamniganische,” *Bulletin of the Institute for the Study of North Eurasian Cultures* 17, 69-75.
- International Phonetic Association, The (1999), *Handbook of the International*

- Phonetic Association: A guide to the use of the International Phonetic Alphabet, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Janhunen, Juha (2003), "Khamnigan Mongol," *The Mongolic languages*, edited by Juha Janhunen, 83-101, London and New York: Routledge.
- Janhunen, Juha (2005), *Khamnigan Mongol*, Muenchen: Lincom GmbH.
- Käthe, U.-Kõhalmi (1959), "Der mongolische-kamniganische Dialekt von Dadal Sum und die Frager der Mongolisierung der Tungusen in der Nordmongolei und Transbaikalen," *Acta Orientalia Hungarica* 9, 163-204.
- Kim, Juwon, Dongho Ko, Chaoko D. O., Youfeng Han, Lianyu Piao, B.V. Boldyrev (2008), *Materials of Spoken Manchu*, Altaic Languages Series 01, Seoul: SNU Press.
- Kowalewski, Joseph Étienne (1844), *Dictionnaire mongol-russe-français* I, Kasan: Imprimerie De L'université.
- Kowalewski, Joseph Étienne (1846), *Dictionnaire mongol-russe-français* II, Kasan: Imprimerie De L'université.
- Kowalewski, Joseph Étienne (1849), *Dictionnaire mongol-russe-français* III, Kasan: Imprimerie De L'université.
- Lessing Ferdinand D., Mattai Haltod, John Gombojab Hangin, Serge Kassatkin (1982), *Mongolian-English Dictionary*, The Mongolia Society, Bloomington, Indiana.
- Li, Yong-Söng, Hoyoung Lee, Hyong-won Choi, Geonsook Kim, Dongeun Lee, Mehmet Ölmez (2008), *A Study of the Middle Chulyum dialect of the Chulyum languages*, Altaic Languages Series 03. Seoul: SNUPress.
- Mostaert, Antoine (1968), *Dictionnaire Ordos*, New York, London: Johnson Reprint Corporation.
- National Statistical Office of Mongolia (2010.06.29), *Хүн ам орон сууцны 2000 оны улсын тооллого, Ес дэх удаагийн. [MNG-NSO-MN-PHC-2000-v2.0]* (<http://www.nso.mn>)
- Poppe, Nicholas, N. (1960), *Buriat Grammar*, Indiana University Publications Uralic and Altaic Series, Vol. 2, The Hague: Mouton & Co.
- Shimunek, Andrew (2006.11.18.), "A brief report on fieldwork among the Khamnigans of Mongolia," *Mongol Survey* 18, Summer-Fall 2006, 14-18, A publication of The Mongolia Society.
- Shimunek, Andrew (2006), "A report on recent fieldwork on Mongolian Khamnigan Mongol," *The 21st international Conference on Mongolian Studies*, 28-43, The Korean Association for Mongolian Studies.
- Shimunek, Andrew (2009.12.16.), "Overlooked diversity: Endangered, poorly studied, and recently extinct languages of Mongolia," Special lecture, Dankook Univeristy, Cheonan.
- Yu, Wonsoo (2004b), "A Brief sketch of the (Aga) Khori Buryat dialect: With special reference to its phonological properties," *Proceedings of the 6th*

- Seoul International Altaic Conference: Researches on Endangered Altaic Languages*, 109-127, The Altaic Society of Korea.
- Yu, Wonsoo (2006), "Remarks on Khuuchin Barga affricates," 《알타이학보》 16, 127-141, 한국알타이학회.
- Yu, Wonsoo (2009a), "Preliminary Report on Fieldwork Studies on Mongolian Languages and Dialects," *Current Issues in Unity and Diversity of Languages, Collection of the papers selected from the CIL* 18, 2812-2823.
- Yu, Wonsoo (2010b), "Personal Pronouns in Mongol Khamnigan of Northern Mongolia," 《2010년도 전국학술대회 발표논문집》, 13-32, 한국알타이학회.
- Yu, Wonsoo and Kwon, Jae-il (2004), "Preliminary remarks on the phonemic system of the Qiqihar Meilis dialect of the Dagur language," 《알타이학보》 14, 153-184, 한국알타이학회.
- YU, Wonsoo, KWON Jae-il, CHOI Moon-Jeong, SHIN Yong-kwon, BORJIGIN Bayarmend, Luvsandorj BOLD (2008c), *A study of the Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language*, Altaic Languages Series 02, Seoul: SNU Press.
- Амаржаргал Б., Ж. Цолоо, Г. Гантогтох (1988), *БНМАУ дахь монгол хэлний аялгууны толь бичиг I: Халх аялгуу*, БНМАУ-ын ШУА, Хэл Зохиолын Хүрээлэн, Улаанбаатар.
- Болд, Л. (Ерөнхий редактор) нар (2008), *Монгол хэлний дэлгэрэнгүй тайлбар толь*, I-V, Шинжлэх Ухааны Академи Хэл Зохиолын Хүрээлэн, Улаанбаатар: "Соёмбо принтинг" хэвлэх газар.
- Гантогтох, Г. (1988), *БНМАУ дахь монгол хэлний аялгууны толь бичиг III: Буриад аялгуу*, Улаанбаатар.
- Грунтов, И.А. (2010.8.8), *Хамниганский язык, Энциклопедии языков Российской федерации и соседних государств*. (http://www.distedu.ru/mirror/_injaz/altaica.narod.ru/LIBRARY/khamniganen.pdf)
- Мишиг, Л. (1962), "Монгол Ард Улсын зарим нутгийн хамниган аялгуут сурвалжилсан нь," *Олон Улсын Монгол хэл бичгийн эрдэмтний Анхдугаар их хурал*, 1-р дэвтэр, 191-211, Улаанбаатар: Шинжлэх Ухааны Академийн Хэвлэл.
- Ринчен (1969), *Монгол Ард Улсын Хамниган Аялгуу*, БНМАУ Шинжлэх Ухааны Академи Хэл Зохиолын Хүрээлэн, Улаанбаатар хот.
- Цолоо, Ж. (1987), "БНМАУ-ын нутгын аялгуу," *Хэл Зохиол Судлал* 18, 5-144, БНМАУ Шинжлэх Ухааны Академи, Хэл Зохиолын Хүрээлэн, Улаанбаатар.
- Цыденжапов, Ш. Р. (1991), *Буряад-Монгол-Ород тобшо толи*, Улан-Удэ: Объединение детских писателей Бурятий.
- Черемисов, К. М. (1951), *Бурят-Монгол-Ород словарь*, Москва: Хари ба Национальна Словарьнуудай Гурэнэй Хэблэл.
- Шимүнек, Эндрю (2006), "Монгол дахь мөхөж буй хамниган монгол хэлийг саяхан сурвалжилсан бяцхан тэмдэглэл," *Эрдэм*

254 A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

Шинжилгээний Бичиг 7, 30-34, Орхон Их Сургууль.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Khamnigan#Evenks_of_Mongolia (2009.08.18)

Abstract

A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

The Mongolic Languages team of the Altaic Society of Korea, Researches on Endangered Altaic Languages (henceforth ASK REAL) carried out its fieldwork studies 29 times on certain Mongolic languages, including Mongol Khamnigan, and their dialects from September 2003 to February 2009. This book is the second fieldwork report and a linguistic description of an endangered Mongolic language by the Mongolic Languages team of ASK REAL, and the most extensive report written in English in the world on Mongol Khamnigan up until now.

This work is composed of four major parts: 1. a general introduction of the Mongol Khamnigan people and their language, 2. a report on the fieldwork studies carried out in Khentii *aimag*, Mongolia, 3. linguistic descriptions of Mongol Khamnigan, and 4. the appendix.

In the first chapter, the Khamnigan people in Mongolia, China, and Russia are introduced.

In the second chapter of this work, which is a general description of the fieldwork studies done in Binder and Dadal *sums*, Khentii *aimag*, Mongolia, we report on our trip to Khentii *aimag*, the reliable people who worked with us, and our consultants, who were eager to help us.

The third chapter of this work presents the phonological,

morphological, and syntactic features of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in this region. In the section on phonology, 17 vowels (six short vowels: /a/, /o/, /u/, /ə/, /ü/, and /i/; seven long vowels: /aa/, /oo/, /uu/, /əə/, /üü/, /ee/, and /ii/; and four diphthongs: /ay/, /oy/, /uy/, and /üy/) and 20 consonants (labial consonants: /b/, /p/, /w/, and /m/; dental-alveolar consonants: /d/, /t/, /n/, /r/, and /l(ʃ)/; alveolar consonants: /j/, /c/, and /s/; alveolar-palatal consonants: /ǰ/, /č/, and /š/; palatal consonant: /y/; and velar consonants: /g/, /k/, /x/, and /ŋ/) are tentatively proposed as the phonemes.

In the section on morphology, features pertinent to the nouns (number, case, reflexive and possessive suffixes), adjectives, numerals (numerals in attribute and cardinal forms, ordinal numerals, collective numerals, distributive numerals, approximate numerals, fractions, multiple numerals, pseudo-numeral words), pronouns (personal, possessive, reflexive, demonstrative, interrogative, indefinite), verbs (finite and non-finite forms, verbal nouns), adverbs, postpositions, particles, and interjections are discussed. In the section on syntax, remarks were made on certain important features, such as the word order, finite forms, and conjunctions.

In the appendix, about 2,800 words, 345 conversational expressions, and 386 sentences and constructions were presented in phonemic transcription with English meanings. The appendix itself would make a contribution both to Altaic Studies and to historical and comparative linguistics.

Key words:

Mongol Khamnigan, Phonology, Morphology, Syntax, Buryat, Khalkha.